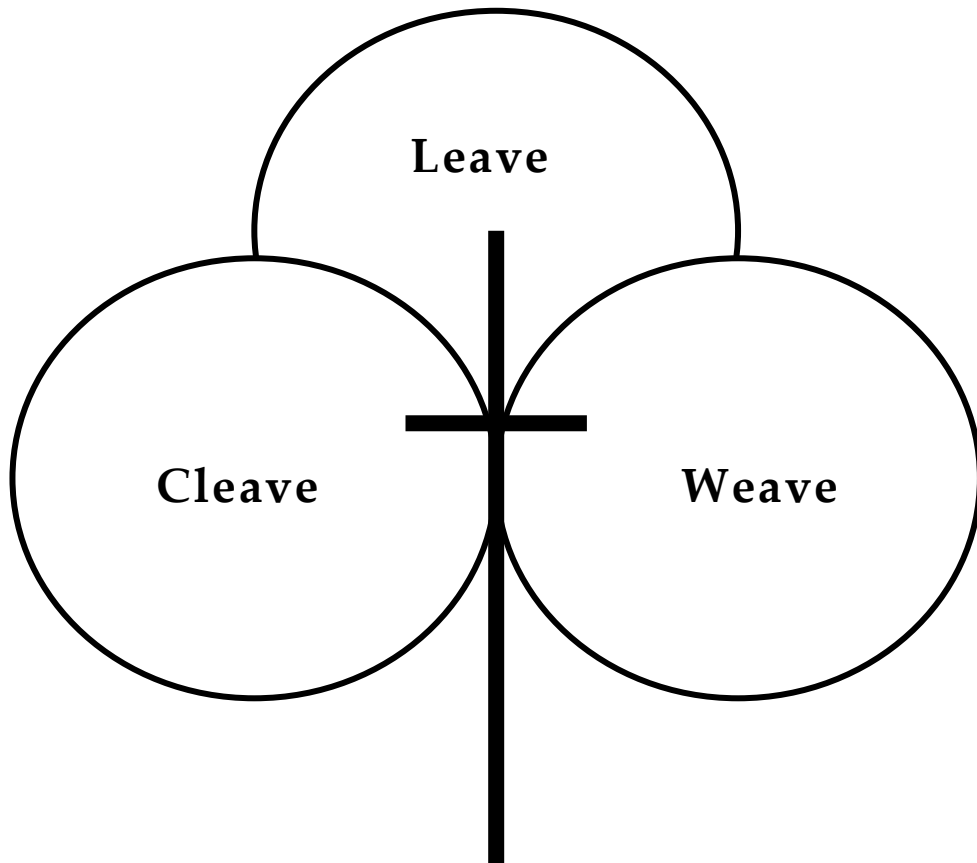


MARRIAGE COUNSELING MANUAL



Building your "house on the rock" – Matthew 7:24

By Dr. Brooky and Jo Ann Stockton

NikeInsights

Preparing for Marriage 3.1

Leave, Cleave, and Weave



Brooky R Stockton, PHD

Pastor / Professor Theology, ret.

PO Box 884

Tijeras, New Mexico (87059)

August 2023

Not for Sale!

Freely received; Freely given

All Rights Reserved

<https://nikeinsights.famguardian.org/>

<https://famguardian.org/>

<https://sedm.org/>

Table of Contents

Table of Contents	3
Preface	6
1.1. Instructions for the Counselor	10
1.2. Instructions for the Counselees	11
2. Getting to Know You	13
2.1. On the Road to Marriage	14
2.2. About You	16
2.3. What About Your Background?	17
3. Confronting Joy Robbers	21
3.1. Adam's Rib	22
3.2. Meet the Joy Robbers	23
3.3. Arresting Joy Robbers	24
3.4. Guilt -- The Thief of Joy	24
3.5. The Dating Game	26
3.6. Guilt & God's Grace	27
3.7. Tapping Into God's Grace by Faith	28
3.8. Necessity of a Clear Conscience	28
3.9. References to Sexual Sins	30
3.10. Our Dating Standards	31
4. Marriage Foundations	32
4.1. Adam's Rib	33
4.2. Agree-Disagree?	34
4.3. The Biblical Foundation for Marriage	35
4.4. Daily Bread	37
4.5. Living Under Grace	38
4.6. Our Life Goals	39
4.7. Solid Ancient Principles	42
4.8. Leave, Cleave, and Weave	44
4.9. Know Your Rights	46
5. The Model for Marriage	48
5.1. Adam's Rib	49
5.2. Role Concept Comparison	50
5.3. The Biblical Model for Marriage	51
5.4. Biblical Love	53
5.5. Marriage Challenges	55
5.6. Submission in the Home	57
5.7. Leadership in the Home	58
5.8. Proverbs 32 for Men	59
6. Walk and Talk	61
6.1. Adam's Rib	62
6.2. Agree-Disagree?	63

6.3.	Just for Fun	64
6.4.	Lessons from the World's Wisest Men	65
6.5.	Communication Challenge	66
6.6.	Tools of Communication.....	67
6.7.	Levels of Communication	68
6.8.	Levels of Conflict in Marriage	69
6.9.	Why Communication is so Difficult?	72
6.10.	The Deeper Side of Love	73
6.11.	Flesh & Spirit Factors in Marriage	75
6.12.	Steps to Repair a Broken Relationship	76
7.	Money Matters	80
7.1.	Adam's Rib	81
7.2.	Agree-Disagree	82
7.3.	Money and Scriptures	83
7.4.	Resource Texts.....	84
7.5.	The Practice of Money Matters	85
7.6.	What is Debt?	86
7.7.	Are You a Taxpayer?	87
7.8.	Testing Your Knowledge about Law	88
7.9.	Steps to Financial Freedom	89
7.10.	Our Budget	94
8.	Love & Luv	95
8.1.	Adam's Rib	96
8.2.	Agree-Disagree	97
8.3.	The Art of Loving.....	98
8.4.	The Hand of Love and the Hand of Lust	99
8.5.	Differences Between Love and Sex	100
8.6.	Differences Between Men and Women, Sometimes	101
8.7.	Sexual Happiness in Marriage	102
8.8.	Just Between Us	105
9.	Planning Your Wedding.....	107
9.1.	Your Only Wedding.....	108
9.2.	A Wedding Format.....	109
9.3.	Decisions About Your Wedding	110
9.4.	Vows	111
9.5.	Sample Wedding Vows	111
9.6.	Wedding Checklist	113
10.	The Marriage Contract.....	115
10.1.	Sample Marriage Contract	116
10.2.	Sample Wedding Ceremony	119
11.	Addendum	123
11.1.	The Authority for Marriage	124
11.2.	Seven Elements of a Biblical Marriage	128
11.3.	Isaac's Marriage Contract	133
11.4.	The Marriage License Trap	142
11.5.	Jurisdiction of Marriage: Church or State?.....	143
11.6.	John the Baptist Martyr for the Definition of Marriage	144
11.7.	The Truth Behind Mixed Marriages.....	146

11.8. The Desire of Women	150
11.9. A Warning About Odious Women	152
11.10.The Truth About Pornography.....	155
11.11.Tattoos Are a Form of Idolatry.....	158
11.12.The Virtuous Woman	159
11.13.Marks of A Godly Woman	166
11.14.Mary, the Model Woman.....	171
11.15.The Deadly Sin of Fornication	172
11.16.There is Power in the Blood	177
11.17.Remedy by Confession	181
11.18.Where Have All the Men Gone?	183
11.19.The Law Against Crossdressing	186
11.20.A Man at the Helm	188
11.21.Manliness.....	196
11.22.Marks of a Godly Man.....	199
11.23.Broke But Not Poor	201
11.24.Are you a U.S. citizen?.....	203
11.25.The Federal Income Tax	205
11.26.Headcoverings: The Sign of a Family Under Christ	209
11.27.Divorce and Remarriage.....	220
11.28.Sample Divorce Papers.....	223
11.29.For Victims of Divorce	227
11.30.Law and the Christian Home.....	227
11.31.The Wonderful Words of Forgiveness	232
11.32.Problems with Quicky Forgiveness	234
11.33.The High Cost of Unforgiveness	238
11.34.Meet the Rechabites - God's Model Family	239
11.35.Grace Upon a Family Under God	242
12. References.....	251
13. Bibliography.....	253



Preface

This work is a Marriage Counseling Manual prepared for church leaders to assist young couples seeking to ground their marriage on Christ. This manual is totally inappropriate for couples who want to be married under the State Statutes and their licensing-capture program.

This is a seven-week conservative, pre-marital, counseling program. It is designed to guide the counselor in matters essential for marriage and to help couples work through some of the issues they will face in their marriage. The first six lessons are to be done jointly with a marriage counselor or counselors, and session seven should be done with the minister who will conduct the wedding ceremony. [Because most ministers are SERVANTS OF THE STATE, a couple may have to search for a Servant of Christ who will marry them under the common law.

Background

God called me to share the gospel and to start a church in a college town. Consequently, many students wanted to be married in the church under God's laws with Christ at the center of their relationship. As a young pastor, I scrambled to come up with a Biblical marriage program that would help these young people get "off on the right foot."

These couples knew almost nothing of the Bible's principles of marriage. All were raised in the jungle of public schools and programmed with humanistic, feministic, anti-male outlooks. Many turned from the passions of the world and received Christ as their Savior. They wanted help on how to make their marriage "survive and thrive." Thus, this course was my attempt to help these delightful couples. Marriages were many and divorces were few.

Personally, I feel very qualified to write this manual.

I am still married to a beautiful, wonderful woman of God. My wife is my best friend, companion, sister in the Lord, lovely wife, mother of our children, a fellow pilgrim on this journey of life, and sometimes my adversary. I call Jo Ann my *isha yapha* – Hebrew for *beautiful woman*.

I tell her she is more valuable to me than "ten acres of pregnant red hogs" but that is when she gives me "the look" and I know I'd better change my metaphor to diamonds.

My *isha yapha* fears the Lord. She says, "I love you" to me every day and then backs it up with truckloads of patience and forgiveness. I told her I loved her

the first day of our marriage, and I meant it. But, she requires I say, "I love you" to her every day. O.K., "I am a man, and I can change . . . if I have too" and did for the betterment of our marriage.

Having said this, we were privileged to sit under the teaching of Jim Wright of Colorado Springs, a Navigator, and learning principles of walking with God – principles that he illustrated with life and marriage vignettes. Little did we know this 14 week class would become the foundation of our own marriage – a marriage that has lasted over 50 years and produced faithful children and beautiful grandchildren . . . and great grandchildren.

Our marriage has been jam packed with love, laughter, and romance, and free of serious conflict, marital squabbles, and relational pain. We haven't had a day of marital grief in our entire marriage – well almost.

Our lives have not been without grief, but our sorrows were not germane to our marriage. We had great parents and grandparents – wonderful models of love and faithfulness. The Lord has proved Himself faithful to us . . . to our beloved children and their spouses.

We only wish that all around us might know the joy and happiness we feel every day.

The key is to know the rules of marriage, and apply grace when failure knocks on our door – grace that makes brings out the sunshine and makes the clouds go away.

Common Law

When I was a young pastor, a man walked into my office and asked me this question, "Pastor, if all authority in heaven and earth is given to Christ, why do we need to get a marriage license from the state to get married?" This question launched me on a study of State and church, common law v. statutory law, and the authority of Christ v. the authority of man, and the power of a common law contract v. a "marriage license" – a tool to bring marriages under State statutory control. It took me a while, but then the lights came on.

2 Corinthians 6:14 Be ye not unequally yoked together with unbelievers:

For millenniums people have gotten married under Biblical authority without permission from the State. When I realized Evangelical pastors had been "snookered" by State propaganda, I "came out from among them" and started marrying people under contract law in the Name of the Lord Jesus Christ.

May the Lord use this manual to guide pastors and elders seeking to equip young couples for their journey through life and to build their "house on the rock."

This manual is designed as a seven-week marriage preparation program, but there is no way any couple can work their way through every aspect of this course in seven weeks; thus, the counselor will have to pick and choose what he thinks each individual couple needs to build their house on the rock and to experience the joy of a Biblical marriage.

Dr. Brooky Stockton, retired pastor and seminary professor.

Qualifications

This packet has been prepared by Brooky and Jo Ann Stockton. They have been in full-time Christian work since 1971 serving Christ in the ministry of evangelism, discipleship, church planting, counseling, Bible teaching, and pastoral ministry.

Dr. Stockton has his Masters of Sacred Literature and a Ph.D. in Theology. He presently serves as pastor of a Baptist church and as professor of theology at Trinity Theological Seminary, S.W. (JAS).

Goals of this course:

1. To clear the conscience.
2. To understand Biblical marital foundations.
3. To grasp God's declared roles for men and women in marriage.
4. To explore the principles of relationships and communication.
5. To study some Biblical principles of financial success.
6. To pursue God's view of human sexuality.
7. To plan to plan a happy wedding.

Acknowledgements

Like most people, we are indebted to those who have helped frame our thinking, supported us financially, and encouraged us in our gospel ministry. This packet is a compilation of ideas and materials that have been stuffed in notebooks and files, gathered from all sorts of talks, books, and handouts from others, and finally drafted into this "Preparing for Marriage" workbook.

First, we are forever grateful to Jim Wright who gave us pre-marital counseling back in 1967. He may never know how his few words and Biblical insights had such a powerful and lasting impact on our marriage.

Secondly, we are indebted to the teaching and examples of our mentors Marion Michaux (CO), John Walden (CO), Jean Gibson (CA), and our Bible teachers at Emmaus Bible school (Chicago).

Most importantly, we are both indebted to our parents, Mr. & Mrs. Larry Stockton and Mr. and Mrs. Richard Hartman, for their wonderful example and support through the years to our marriage and our children.

I grew up knowing nothing but love and acceptance. I heard the word *divorce* on several occasions while in my youth, but it never occurred to me couples actually did such a thing. Dad loved mom, and mom loved Dad. That was it. Dad was a good provider and an excellent leader. Mom was a homemaker and supportive wife. He took great joy and pride in her home. We knew “nothing of white privilege” and wealth, but we had what we needed.

When I look at struggling couples, blended families, and ugly divorces, I thank God for the rare gift of love my parents provided for my sister and I—a stable, happy home where Dad lead, Mom followed, and love was real. Their support did not stop when I married Jo Ann. Through the years they were there to support us in our struggles. As soon as the kids came home from school or a soccer game, the first thing they would do was call Granddad and Mom to share their joy. Unlike many who plunge into personal concerns, Granddad and Mom invested in all their grandkids with rare devotion and personal sacrifice.

When Jo Ann and I were married, I was blessed with my in-laws. I cannot imagine anyone having more devoted and loving parents than the Hartmans. I can only imagine, with laughter, how they must have felt as they watched two imbalanced young Christians start a young family. Without criticism, they accepted and supported us. Yearly, they made a special trip to visit their grandkids. There “vacation” was “us.” Imagine! The kids would shiver with anticipation when they heard Grandpa and Grandma were coming. Grandpa and Grandma adored the children and filled the time by reading stories, playing games, taking the kids to the park. In all the years they visited our home, they did not give us one ounce of grief in all the years of marriage. I mean it! To the contrary, every reunion was filled with laughter and joy. Today, I consider them among my closest friends and a gift from God to my family. “Thank you, Lord!”

Disclaimer

This book is not anti-government. It is anti-corruption in government.

Because the present political climate is pro-Zionism, pro-lawlessness, pro-censorship, antichrist, and antichristian: and, because government employees and government media is more sensitive that a step-mother about criticism, it is necessary to warn government officials of the following:

Public Notice

NOTICE to persons in commerce, State and Federal Government offices and officials, including NSA: All emails proceed on the presumption of privacy. By

capturing, reading, storing, and filing any publications from or to Nike Insights nunc pro tunc to 1946, you agree to pay me a fee of one million dollars in U.S. gold dollar coin per email stored, filed, retrieved, printed, or catalogued – Brooky R: Stockton, living soul, under the common law of the LORD God.

Copyright Infringement Notice

Know this work is NOT FOR SALE. All art work is from Art Explosion with few exceptions. If there is a graphic that infringes upon copyrights due to internet publications, know it is not intentional. Please inform by 2024, and we will be glad to remove copyrighted graphics.

1.1. Instructions for the Counselor

“Even a fool, when he holdeth his peace, is counted wise: and he that shutteth his lips is esteemed a man of understanding” – Proverbs 17:28

“Do not be rash with your mouth, And let not your heart utter anything hastily before God. For God is in heaven, and you on earth; Therefore let your words be few. For a dream comes through much activity, And a fool’s voice is known by his many words” – Ecclesiastes 5:2-3

1. Your role in this course is to assist the unmarried couple in working through the principles so they can build their “house on the rock;” that is, to assist them in working through issues one with another from a Biblical perspective.
2. This program is **NOT** your opportunity to talk about you, your wife you’re your problems in your marriage. If you are doing more talking than listening, then you will sabotage the purpose of these sessions.
3. See yourself as a **MANAGER OF QUESTIONS** rather than a dispenser of information. Look at your job as a *Question Machine*, **NOT** an *answering machine*.
4. Avoid using pronouns like “I”, “me,” “my,” or “we.” If you use these pronouns you are focusing the couple on yourself and not the Word of God. This course is NOT about you, BUT ABOUT THEM.
5. You don’t need all the answers. But, YOU do need to know how to manage questions. Usually, one party is more talkative than the other. Draw out the quiet, reserved party. The groom is the key. Help get the man to seriously work through the issues.

6. If the man can't or won't think. Terminate the sessions. He needs to mature before he gets married. If the woman is too talkative, has all the answers, thinks out loud, and won't listen to her partner-to-be, terminate the sessions. She needs to grow in self-control and piety.
7. You obviously have experience, and you can share those experiences, but do so rarely and infrequently. May the Lord give you wisdom.
8. The articles in the Addendum address some issues facing modern marriages. You can give couples assigned readings, if you think they are needful to the couple.

1.2. Instructions for the Counselors

“Therefore everyone who hears these words of mine and puts them into practice is like a wise man who built his house on the rock. The rain came down, the streams rose, and the winds blew and beat against that house; yet it did not fall, because it had its foundation on the rock. But everyone who hears these words of mine and does not put them into practice is like a foolish man who built his house on sand. The rain came down, the streams rose, and the winds blew and beat against that house, and it fell with a great crash” – Matthew 7:24-27

1. According to the census bureau, 40 to 50 percent of first marriages end in divorce. You can avoid being a part of this statistic by building your *house upon the Rock*.
2. This course is for you and your fiancée'. It is an opportunity for you to work through the principles on which you are going to build your marriage.
3. This is a time for you and your fiancé to explore God's Word about marriage. You can do this by yourselves by working through this manual or you can gain the assistance of a godly counselor.
4. If your counselor(s) is doing all the talking and or lecturing you each week, you must confront them for TALKING TOO MUCH and exhort them to readjust their methodology and refrain from TALKING TOO MUCH.
5. Be committed to six weeks of studying, thinking, and growing . . . to build your future on the Rock of God's Word.
6. DON'T MAKE WEDDING PLANS until you have finished this course. Planning a wedding is a flood of detail and decisions. It is not a good time to learn how to swim in the middle of a flood. Finish the course and then

launch your ship in the sea of wedding plans. May the Lord give you grace to build your house upon the Rock.

Lesson One

2. Getting to Know You



Through wisdom a house is built (Proverbs 24:3)

2.1. On the Road to Marriage

"Whoso findeth a wife findeth a good thing, and obtaineth favour of the LORD" – Proverbs 18:22



Look Around

There is growing pressure in our society to be married, to have sex, and not be married. We are bombarded by billboards, T.V. commercials, music, literature and movies with the idea that marriage is the only road to happiness. A single person may feel odd, or a little guilty if marriage is not on the near horizon.

In the Middle Ages, marriage was scoffed at as a weakness and the single man was praised for his self-sufficiency. But in the twentieth century the pendulum swung the other way. If one is not married by 22, he may feel like God has mercilessly doomed him to a ghastly fate. After all, who can be happy and single?

Look At Christ

But consider this: Jesus Christ was not married. He was never involved in a romantic relationship and yet He experienced complete human ness. Paul was single and there is no evidence that He was anything but a whole person. Paul said, "For you have been given fullness in Christ . . ." (Colossians 2:9). There are resources in Christ outside a marital relationship.

Jesus said, "Follow Me." He may want you to be single and totally available for His use and pleasure. All of us have been single at one time or another. Being single is the will of God for all of at least part of our life. The only question is: Is God leading you to be single or to get married at this time?

Look Before You Leap

Someone has said, "Keep both eyes open before you are married, and keep them half shut after you are married."

There are advantages in remaining single for at least part of one's life. Single people have greater freedoms. They can go anywhere cheaper. And, single people can go anywhere and do anything they want. Most have a better chance for financial freedom. You have heard that it is cheaper by the dozen, or that two can live for the price of one. Do not believe it. In short, the single people have a less cumbersome lifestyle than that which often troubles developing families.

However, the Bible fully supports marriage, and it is the normal course for most people: "He who finds a wife, finds a good thing" (Proverbs 18:22). Marriage is a wonderful union that has the tremendous advantage when it comes to companionship. Singleness was the first state of man, and the eye of God said that was not good for man to be alone (Genesis 2:18). Loneliness is not a blessed state, and it is contrary to the will of God. There is no greater joy than to share life with the one you love. Marriage is God's remedy for loneliness.

Marriage is binding. It is not a social contract with a convenient "if" clause that provides a way of escape in times of pressure. Marriage is a total commitment of the total person for total life. It is a permanent union in this life. A vow is involved: "If you make a vow to the Lord your God, do not be slow to pay it, for the Lord your God will certainly demand it of you and you will be guilty of sin" (Deuteronomy 23:21).

Count the cost. Marriage is wonderful if God is in it with you. It can be devastating if He is not. Look before you leap!

Am I Ready For Marriage?

How does a person know if he or she is ready for marriage? Does one toss a coin? "Heads, I do," or "Tails, I do not." A flip of the quarter may be good for sports, but not in deciding life's second greatest decision.

Much of life is a matter of timing. Gymnasts, quarterbacks, and pianists have all learned the necessity of timing. "A prudent wife is from the Lord." For the one seeking God, there is a right person and a right time to marry.

A person contemplating marriage should ask himself the following questions honestly before the Lord:

- Is your potential fiancé unquestionably a Christian?
- Is the Lord Jesus Christ allowed to control most areas of your life?
- Have you known each other at least a year?
- Is your relationship pure and free from sexual involvement?
- If your fiancée does not change, can you live with his /her present character?
- Are there financial resources available that can readily support a family?
- Are you ready to be a father or mother?
- Are you holding responsibilities in the local church?
- Are you a person that has a reputation for keeping commitments?
- Will both sets of parents welcome this union?

- Are you willing to wait if it will promise a better marriage?
- Are you willing to go through a marriage counseling program?

If you answered "Yes" to all or most of the above questions, it is probable that marriage is a wise choice in your life. If you answered "No" to one or more questions, it may be that you're marrying the wrong person, or it is the wrong timing for a marriage for you.

Marriage counseling can help you to decide if God wants you to be married and it can help you to prepare for a successful marriage.

Trust in the Lord with all your heart and lean not on your own understanding. In all your ways acknowledge Him and He will make your paths straight (Proverbs 3:5-6).

2.2. About You

1. How long have you known each other?
2. Do your parents whole-heartedly approve of this union?
3. Describe your relationship with your parents and the home in which you were raised.
4. Do you anticipate any problems with your "soon-to-become" in-laws?
5. Do you consider yourself a Christian, or still on your way?
6. In your opinion, what is a true Christian?
7. How would you describe your relationship to God right now?
8. How would you describe your relationship to your fiancée during this engagement period?
9. Describe the depth of your physical involvement.
10. Have you established any engagement policies in the area of hand-holding, kissing, petting, or pre-marital sex? If so, what?
11. What personal strengths do you bring into this marriage that will make it successful?
12. What personal weaknesses do you have that might work against a successful relationship?

13. What strengths do you see in your fiancée that causes you to be attracted to him/her?
14. Are there any weaknesses in your fiancée of which you are concerned or that you would like to change? If so, what?
15. Have you had any disagreements in the last few months that caused either of you to be angry or upset? If so, what?
16. How did you resolve them?
17. Are there any issues in your relationship that you feel need to be discussed in our counseling sessions?
18. What do you anticipate to receive from pre-marriage counseling?
19. Are you willing to commit yourself to all the assignments before you marry?

2.3. What About Your Background?

*“A truthful witness saves lives, but one who breathes out lies is deceitful” –
Proverbs 14:25*

The following questions are personal and specific. You may find it painful and difficult to deliver an honest answer. This is normal. However, it is extremely important that you answer the following questions truthfully. Some problems in your past may affect your future marriage. Your counselor needs to know if he/she is to be a help.

YES NO QUESTIONS:

- | | | |
|-----|-----|--|
| --- | --- | 1. Was your relationship to your father a happy one? |
| --- | --- | 2. Were you ever verbally or physically abused as a child? |
| --- | --- | 3. Were you ever sexually abused in your youth? |
| --- | --- | 4. Have you ever had a pre-marital sexual experience? |
| --- | --- | 5. Have you had multiple sexual partners? |
| --- | --- | 6. Have you ever had a homosexual/lesbian experience? |
| --- | --- | 7. Have you ever been pregnant? |
| --- | --- | 8. Have you had an abortion? |
| --- | --- | 9. Have your parents ever been divorced? |

- ___ ___ 10. To your knowledge has there been adultery in your family?
- ___ ___ 11. Has there been any alcohol or substance abuse in your family?
- ___ ___ 12. Have you ever been drunk or had an alcohol problem?
- ___ ___ 13. Has pornographic visuals been a part of your past?
- ___ ___ 14. Have you ever seen explicit sex acts on stage or on film?
- ___ ___ 15. Have you ever had AIDS testing...or testing for VD?
- ___ ___ 16. Have you ever had any psychological testing or counseling?
- ___ ___ 17. Are there any issues that you feel need particular discussion?
- ___ ___ 18. Did you answer the above questions truthfully?

Counseling from a Biblical Perspective

*“The way of a fool is right in his own eyes,
But a wise man is he who listens to counsel” –
Proverbs 12:15*



What is Christian marriage counseling? Why is the Bible important to a marriage foundation? Below are a set of propositions on which this whole course is based.

Proposition # 1 Marriage is not man's idea. The Creator designed this wonderful relationship.

Therefore, this Christian marriage counseling course is an attempt to understand the marital relationship from His point of view.

Proposition #2 The Bible is the Inspired Word of God and is the final source of authority on the subjects in which it speaks. The correct pattern for marriage is found in the Scripture. It is on this foundation that the Christian marriage seeks to build its structure.

Proposition # 3 All marriages need a model. The model for the Christian marriage is found in the relationship between Christ and his church (Ephesians 5:22ff). The Biblical model is the Christ's sacrificial love demonstrated for the church and the church's submission to her Lord. Every marriage can succeed as each follows God's plan with God's help.

Proposition #4 Good marriages follows God's plan for marriage. Men and women are sinners and that there are spiritual forces operating in the world that war against a healthy marriage. A good marriage does not happen. It is built according to a plan. Though that plan is found in the Scripture, the

weakness and natural thinking of men and women work against that plan unless the marriage is brought under the authority of the Lord Jesus Christ.

Proposition # 5 Marriage is a lifetime contract and therefore should be entered into with thoughtful planning, preferably with the help of a wise counsel. Because confusion abounds in today's society, and because handling a relationship is so sensitive, we deem it wise to seek counsel so that your marriage can be a success.

What is Expected of You?

Three Tasks



This course has three parts to it. The first requires a personal time alone with God and your Bible. Here you will do a Bible study and work through assigned questionnaires. Secondly, there is a time required together as a couple where you will get together to share and discuss your findings. Thirdly, there is a time you come together with your counselors. Meeting every week, the course will take about six to eight weeks to complete.

Personal Time

This will require about an hour of your time for each session. You will need to spend time digging in the Bible to root out the answers to the questions. Write down your answers and be prepared to share them with your fiancée and your counselors.

Personal Date

On your special date you will discuss the Questionnaires and Bible study to compare answers and ideas. Second, you will need to work through some issues and principles. Third, you will need to spend some time in prayer together. The purpose of this course is communication. Can you agree on the principles upon which you are going to build your marriage? This date will last two hours.

Personal Appointment

After having done your assignment together, you will need to set a time with your counselors to discuss the study, the issues facing you as a couple, and the principles of the lesson. Each session will last about an hour and a half, depending on how the counselors work through the material with you.

Our Commitment

In order to have a successful marriage, one must be committed to God and his principles regarding human relationships. These lessons will need to be studied and discussed so that unity can be achieved in the marriage relationship. It is necessary, therefore, to be committed to the counseling sessions.

Please read the following commitment.

By God's help:

I will do the assignments given for each counseling session.

I will not drop out unless an emergency or other unforeseen event arises.

I will do this unto the Lord Jesus Christ, and not unto men.

Signature _____ Date _____

Signature _____ Date _____

Please sign this and keep it in your notebook as a reminder between you and the Lord (Psalm 15:4b)

Lesson Two

3. Confronting Joy Robbers

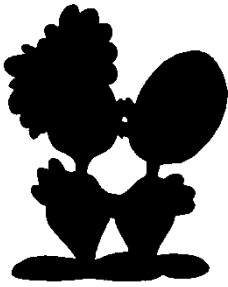


JOY JOY JOY JOY

“Then he said unto them, Go your way, eat the fat, and drink the sweet, and send portions unto them for whom nothing is prepared: for this day is holy unto our Lord: neither be ye sorry; for the joy of the LORD is your strength” – Nehemiah 8:10

“That he would grant unto us, that we being delivered out of the hand of our enemies might serve him without fear” (Luke 1:74).

3.1. Adam's Rib



Sharon loved Sam, but she worried about the way he squandered money when they went on a date. Finally, she decided to consult her mother.

"How," she asked, "can I stop John from spending so much money on me?"

Her mother groaned with a sigh: "Marry him."

Lover boy: "My, what beautiful skin you have...what beautiful teeth you have....what beautiful eyes you have. Where did you get those eyes?"

Unimpressed girl: "They came with my head."

The young man said he knew his girl could keep a secret because they had been engaged for weeks before he knew about it.

Beauty: Is there anything about me you would like to change?

Lover boy: Just your name.

Cain: "I've been asked to get married many times."

Abel: "Really. Who asked you?"

Cain: "Mom and Dad."

Eve: Isn't it wonderful that God has made almost the same number of men as he did women?

Adam: "Yes, a women for every man."

Eve: "That's something you can't improve on, isn't it?"

Adam: "Oh, I don't want to improve on it...I'm just glad I'm in on it."

1st Egyptian: "Who was that lady I saw you with last night?"

2nd Egyptian: "That wasn't a lady. That was my mummy."

Newly Wed Husband: "Honey, why does this steak taste so funny?"

Newly Wed Bride: "I can't imagine. I may have burned it a little after I put the suntan oil on it."

Gill: "Do you believe in clubs for women?"

Gus: "Yes, if every other form of persuasion fails."

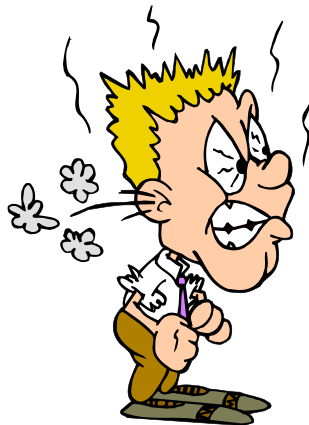
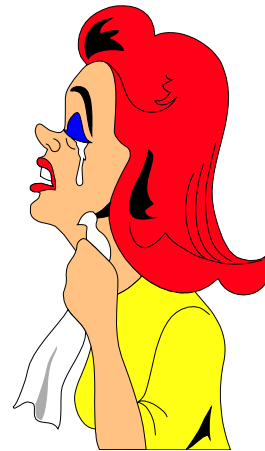
Father: "What are your boyfriend's intentions?"

Daughter: "I'm not sure. He's been keeping me pretty much in the dark."

3.2. Meet the Joy Robbers

What Are the Major Joy Robbers in Marriage?

- Guilt: the performance trap
- Shame: the embarrassment factor
- Criticalness: the blame game
- Loneliness: the withdrawal factor
- Differences: the unthankful spirit
- Weaknesses: the unguarded walk
- Rebellion: the independent spirit



3.3. Arresting Joy Robbers

JOY ROBBER	MY CHALLENGE	GOD'S GRACE
Guilt	Is there anything in my past I need to deal with? Do I know for sure my sins are forgiven?	Justification and Forgiveness
Shame	Is there anything in me or about me of which I am ashamed? Do I understand God's new creation?	Regeneration & Sanctification
Criticalness	Of what and of whom am I critical? Do I understand that Christ took my blame for me on the cross?	Propitiation & Substitution
Loneliness	What causes me to withdraw from people, friends, family, and church? Do I understand God's desire for relationship?	Reconciliation
Differences	What are the differences that threaten our relationship: background, sex, values, habits, goals, wants?	Appreciation
Weakness	What weaknesses do I have that threaten our relationship? Have I given permission to my mate to help me?	Permission
Rebellion	What and when do I have a tendency to rebel against God? Does my mate have my permission to confront me?	Contrition

3.4. Guilt -- The Thief of Joy

Psalm 38

1 A Psalm of David, to bring to remembrance.> O LORD, rebuke me not in thy wrath: neither chasten me in thy hot displeasure.

2 *For thine arrows stick fast in me, and thy hand presseth me sore.*

3 *There is no soundness in my flesh because of thine anger; neither is there any rest in my bones because of my sin.*

4 *For mine iniquities are gone over mine head: as an heavy burden they are too heavy for me.*

5 *My wounds stink and are corrupt because of my foolishness.*

6 *I am troubled; I am bowed down greatly; I go mourning all the day long.*

7 *For my loins are filled with a loathsome disease: and there is no soundness in my flesh.*

8 *I am feeble and sore broken: I have roared by reason of the disquietness of my heart.*

9 *Lord, all my desire is before thee; and my groaning is not hid from thee.*

10 *My heart panteth, my strength faileth me: as for the light of mine eyes, it also is gone from me.*

11 *My lovers and my friends stand aloof from my sore; and my kinsmen stand afar off.*

12 *They also that seek after my life lay snares for me: and they that seek my hurt speak mischievous things, and imagine deceits all the day long.*

13 *But I, as a deaf man, heard not; and I was as a dumb man that openeth not his mouth.*

14 *Thus I was as a man that heareth not, and in whose mouth are no reproofs.*

15 *For in thee, O LORD, do I hope: thou wilt hear, O Lord my God.*

16 *For I said, Hear me, lest otherwise they should rejoice over me: when my foot slippeth, they magnify themselves against me.*

17 *For I am ready to halt, and my sorrow is continually before me.*

18 *For I will declare mine iniquity; I will be sorry for my sin.*










19 *But mine enemies are lively, and they are strong: and they that hate me wrongfully are multiplied.*

20 *They also that render evil for good are mine adversaries; because I follow the thing that good is.*

21 *Forsake me not, O LORD: O my God, be not far from me.*

22 *Make haste to help me, O Lord my salvation.*

3.5. The Dating Game

	Dating	Engagement	Marriage
God's Way	Spiritual Oneness 	Soul Oneness 	Physical Oneness 
Man's Way	Physical Oneness  	Pretending love  	Isolation  

*“Bless the Lord, O my soul, and all that is within me, bless his holy name!
 Bless the Lord, O my soul, and forget not all his benefits, who forgives all your iniquity, who heals all your diseases, who redeems your life from the pit, who crowns you with steadfast love and mercy, who satisfies you with good so that your youth is renewed like the eagle’s” - Psalm 103:1-22*

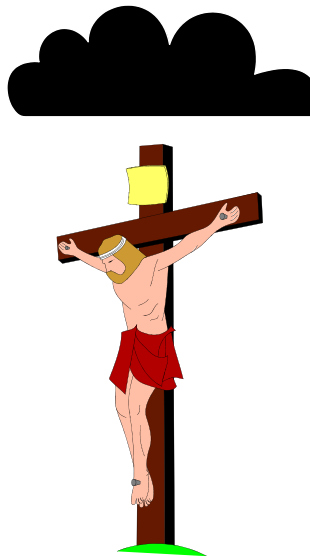
3.6. Guilt & God's Grace

Psalm 32:1-5 Blessed is he whose transgression is forgiven, whose sin is covered. Blessed is the man unto whom the LORD imputeth not iniquity, and in whose spirit there is no guile. When I kept silence, my bones waxed old through my roaring all the day long. For day and night thy hand was heavy upon me: my moisture is turned into the drought of summer. Selah. I acknowledged my sin unto thee, and mine iniquity have I not hid. I said, I will confess my transgressions unto the LORD; and thou forgavest the iniquity of my sin. Selah.

Psalm 51:3-4, 12 For I acknowledge my transgressions: and my sin is ever before me. Against thee, thee only, have I sinned, and done this evil in thy sight: that thou mightest be justified when thou speakest, and be clear when thou judges Restore unto me the joy of thy salvation; and uphold me with thy free spirit.

Isaiah 55:6-7 Seek ye the LORD while he may be found, call ye upon him while he is near. Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return unto the LORD, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon.

1 John 1:9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.



3.7. Tapping Into God's Grace by Faith

"For whatsoever is born of God overcometh the world: and this is the victory that overcometh the world, even our faith" – 1 John 5:4

Justification & Forgiveness

Romans 5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ

Colossians 2:14 And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, hath he quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses; Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross;

1John 2:12 I write unto you, little children, because your sins are forgiven you for his name's sake.

Faith Appropriates the Joy

Philippians 1:25 . . . for your furtherance and joy of faith (a genitive)

Psalms 27:13 I had fainted, unless I had believed to see the goodness of the LORD in the land of the living.

3.8. Necessity of a Clear Conscience



The conscience is the soul's alarm system. What a smoke alarm is to a homeowner, the conscience is to the spiritual man. The conscience is a gift of God that lets a man know when evil is near. But, what shall a man do if his conscience does not work correctly? Six conditions of the conscience are mentioned in Scripture. Which of the following represent your conscience?

A Good Conscience: "Now the end of the commandment is charity out of a pure heart, and of a good conscience, and of faith unfeigned" (1 Timothy 1:5; 1 Peter 3:16, 21). God's Word programs a good conscience and sounds an alarm when evil is present. It is indispensable for a happy relationship.

A Defiled Conscience: "Unto the pure all things are pure: but unto them that are defiled and unbelieving is nothing pure; but even their mind and

conscience is defiled" (Titus 1: 15). A defiled conscience is a dirty conscience. It is like a car windshield that gets dirtier and dirtier. A dirty conscience is undependable, unreliable, overloaded, tired, and sluggish. It may fail to sound an loud alarm in the presence of evil.

The solution for a dirty conscience is a thorough scrubbing by the Word of God (Psalm 119:9-11).

A Seared Conscience: "Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron" (1 Timothy 4:2).

A seared conscience is like scar tissue with no feeling. Though wickedness is present, the conscience does not sound its alarm. It is like a smoke detector that does not work even when engulfed by flames. By then, it is too late.

One develops a seared conscience when one ignores the alarm and plays with fire. Sinning again and again creates spiritual scar tissue.

The solution for a seared conscience is deep, deep repentance.

A Weak Conscience: "But when ye sin so against the brethren, and wound their weak conscience, ye sin against Christ" (1 Corinthians 8:12). The Jews of Paul's day had a weak conscience (Romans 14). Though God pronounced all foods clean, their conscience sounded an alarm in the presence of pork, shrimp, and beef offered to idols. A weak conscience is one that sounds an alarm over trivia: eating an extra hotdog, stuttering over a word, or failing to brush your teeth three times a day. A weak conscience is a nuisance because it sounds an alarm in peacetime. It is like a smoke alarm that goes off on a humid day.

The solution for a weak conscience is to reprogram it according to God's Word.

An Evil Conscience: Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water (Hebrews 10:22).

An evil conscience is a conscience that feels bad for doing something right. Like a virus your computer, bad programming produces an evil conscience. For example: you may hear of convicts that won't snitch on fellow inmates out of a false sense of loyalty. They feel good about protecting a murderer, and they feel bad about helping the police. This is an evil conscience.

The solution for an evil conscience is deprogramming. One must trash bad instructions, and then reprogram the conscience with good instructions from God's Word.

A Pure Conscience: "Holding the mystery of the faith in a pure conscience" (1 Timothy 3: 9; 2 Timothy 1:3).

The word “pure” is the word “*kartharsis*.” A pure conscience is one that has been inspected and scrubbed clean. The key to a pure conscience is faith in the blood of Christ (1 John 1:7) and confession of one’s sins (1 John 1:9).

A Clear Conscience and Marriage: Couples who have had a sexual relationship prior to marriage feel guilty about it because they have violated God’s law. This guilt can be painful. The natural way to deal with the pain is to avoid any issues, subjects, or situations that might trigger the conscience. Guilty people plays a little game called “Hide and Seek.” They cannot develop spiritually because when they are conscious of God, they are also conscious of their guilt. The result is a breakdown in communication that leads to isolation and loneliness in marriage. Clearing the conscience is a necessity if the couple wants to have a relationship deeper than a puddle on a sidewalk.

The key to a clear conscience is to be honest with God and to confess your guilt to him and to those who are directly affected by your actions (1 John 1:9).

3.9. References to Sexual Sins


“Know ye not that the unrighteous shall not inherit the kingdom of God? Be not deceived: neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor effeminate, nor abusers of themselves with mankind, Nor thieves, nor covetous, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortioners, shall inherit the kingdom of God” – 1 Corinthians 6:9-10

You are born either a male or a female. All 30 trillion cells in your body are a witness to your true gender.


Lust: The stirring up of physical desires (Ephesians 5:3).

Sensuality: A condition where a person’s physical drives are stronger than one’s spiritual drives (1Thessalonians 4:5).

Spiritual Desires: 

Physical Desires: 

Defrauding: A seductive act designed to stir up the desires of the opposite sex that one cannot lawfully fulfill (1 Thessalonians 4:6).

A person  opposite sex

Incest: Illicit sex with a close relative.

Fornication: Consensual sex outside by uncommitted, unmarried people.

Date rape: Forcible sex with a person who has not consented but fails to physically resist.

Violent rape: forcible sex with a person who has not consented, not compromised, and physically resisted aggression.

Homosexuality: sexual expressions with the same sex.

Lesbianism: Females having sexual experiences with other females.

Transgenderism: Dressing or acting like the opposite sex.

3.10. Our Dating Standards

*“There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man: but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it”
- 1 Corinthians 10:13*

List the Standards to which you are committed during your engagement:

Hand holding: _____

Kissing: _____

Petting: _____

Sex: _____

Our commitment:

Signature

Date

Signature

Date

Session Three

4. Marriage Foundations



According to the grace of God which is given unto me, as a wise master builder, I have laid the foundation, and another buildeth thereon. But let every man take heed how he buildeth thereupon – 1 Corinthians 3:10

4.1. Adam's Rib



A distant relative appeared at the door of the house and a young boy answered the door.

"You don't know me," said the relative, "but I'm your aunt on your father's side."

Shaking his head the boy said, "I can tell you right now: You're on the wrong side."

Biff: "Your father's legs are too short."

Miff: "They are not! Both of them touch the floor, don't they?"

Daughter: "Dad, I want to get married but I just hate to leave mother."

Father: "I understand, but don't let me stand in the way. Take your mother with you."

Student husband: "Honey, help me correct this sentence: 'It was me who broke the window.'"

Smart wife: "It wasn't me who broke the window."

Joe: "What's the best way to teach a girl to swim?"

Moe: "First you put your left arm around her waist, then you gently take her right hand and..."

Joe: "She's my sister."

Moe: "Oh...push her off the dock."

Ho: "How old would you say that girl is?"

Hum: "Somewhere in her middle flirties."

Frank: "What tense is 'I am beautiful?'"

Fran: "Past"

A few women want to remain single, but most of them would rather knot.

Eve: "Adam, do you think God meant what he said when he said that we shall one day return to dust."

Adam: "Of corpse."

Christianity teaches that a man is supposed to have only one wife: It is called monotomy.

4.2. Agree-Disagree?

AgreeDisagree

- ___ ___ 1. The main goal of life is to be happy.
- ___ ___ 2. I cannot be happy unless I am married.
- ___ ___ 3. The husband should set the policies in the home.
- ___ ___ 4. If needed, it would be O.K. to move in with his parents.
- ___ ___ 5. In-laws should have a say in where and how we live.
- ___ ___ 6. The wife should spend her money the way she wants.
- ___ ___ 7. Sex was created for fun.
- ___ ___ 8. The wife does not have a right to refuse her husband sex.
- ___ ___ 9. The wife should help support the family.
- ___ ___ 10. The husband should call his new father-in-law, "Dad".
- ___ ___ 11. Pre-marital sex is necessary to test the relationship.
- ___ ___ 12. Virgins make better lovers.
- ___ ___ 13. The wife should live where the husband wants to live.
- ___ ___ 14. Using birth control is not trusting God.
- ___ ___ 15. A couple should wait years before having children.
- ___ ___ 16. The things of God should come first in the marriage.
- ___ ___ 17. A husband has a right to visit his friends when he wants.
- ___ ___ 18. We should be financially secure before having a baby.

- ___ ___ 19. Loving couples have little or no disagreements.
___ ___ 20. Marriage is permanent, even after adultery.

4.3. The Biblical Foundation for Marriage

Genesis 2 & 3



Instructions: Read Genesis 1 & 2 together and answer the following questions:

God created the institution of marriage. In light of our culture, how would you define marriage?

Even though God's creation was "good," why did God create marriage (2:18)?

Why did God put Adam to sleep when He created Eve? And, why did God not create man and woman at the same time?

What does the order of creation tell you about headship and leadership?

What do you learn about roles in marriage from this chapter (2:20)?

What do you learn about the purpose of marriage from this chapter (2:18, 20, 23, 24).

Why is leaving and cleaving and weaving mentioned in verse 24? In what way is a man and a woman to leave their mother and father?

What does nakedness have to do with love and trust?

What were the joy-robbers in this marriage (3:1-19)?

What was the evidence that this marriage was in trouble – and any marriage for that matter (3:8-19)?

What did God do to repair the relationships in this chapter (3:21)?

Application:

How will God's principles apply to your marriage?

- What will be your role in this home?
- In your opinion, what are the joy-robbers that threaten your relationship?
- In your opinion, what is "grace" and how can you apply it when your relationship is threatened?

Leadership Challenges

Work through any issues that you feel are pertinent to your relationship. Write down your answers and be prepared to discuss them during the next counseling session.

20. What issues and policies do you need to discuss and work through regarding your parents and new extended family?

21. How do you leave, but not abandon your family?

- Place to live?
- Christmas plans?
- Names to call your in-laws by?
- How can you include your extended family in your affairs?
- Gifts, anniversaries, birthdays?
- Special family issues?
- Prayer?

My Family:

22. What did you like and not like about your parent’s marriage.

Create a discussion on what you want to follow from your parents' marriage and what you want to avoid from their model.

FOLLOW	AVOID

My Past:

Prayerfully look over the following list. If any topic has been a part of your personal or family history, check it, and discuss how you feel about it and how you intend to keep it from affecting your future together.

- Alcohol or substance abuse
- Divorce
- Abortion
- Child Abuse
- Extra-marital affairs
- Homosexuality
- Pornography
- Sexual experiences
- A great tragedy
- Bankruptcy
- A criminal record
- A major death
- Disease & Health

23. In your opinion, how can God's grace help you overcome negatives in your past?

24. In our culture, there are many different views about what marriage is. In your opinion, how does God's design for marriage differ from common notions in this culture?

25. Under what authority and under what jurisdiction do you want to be married?

- State authority?
- Or, Biblical Authority?

26. Why?

27. Why not submit to state law, get a marriage license, get married by a Justice of the Peace, and let the state oversee your marriage?

4.4. Daily Bread

"Man shall not live by Bread Alone, but by every word that proceedeth out of the mouth of God" - Matthew 4:4



Someone has said, "You are what you eat!" A diet of green vegetables and fruits produce one result and a diet of pizza, potato chips, and pasta produce another. Likewise, a man who studies the morning newspaper yields one kind of fruit, and the man who studies the Scripture yields quite another. The Bible is called bread and daily intake is

necessary for spiritual health. While few will never skip a daily meal, skipping daily Bible reading is a practice by many.

When God created man, he created Adam first and Eve later. Why? Because Adam needed time to get to know His Creator before he met his mate. Likewise, God put Adam to sleep when He made Eve so she could have time to meet with her Creator before she met her husband. There is nothing more important to a happy marriage than meeting with God on a daily basis.

Doctors advise patients to try and reduce stress in their lives, but life is stress. It is impossible to escape the pulls and tugs of the daily grind. However, it is possible to be prepared for the tensions that stretch resources by scheduling a daily quiet time. What food is to the body, the Word of God is to the human soul. As ancient Israel gathered manna in the wilderness in the morning, the believer needs to meditate on the Scripture in his home before he goes to work. The Word of God is a like milk that nourishes the soul (1 Peter 2:2) and causes it to grow in Christ-likeness. His word cleanses imparts wisdom (Psalm 19:7), and satisfies the heart (19:8), sharpens the vision (19:8), and cleanses the soul (19:9-11). Malnourished souls make pour mates.

You can reap the benefits of a daily quiet time in your marriage by implementing the following Plans:

Policy	I will feed on God's Word day by day.
Place	I will find a place to be alone with God.
Prayer	I will pray for my family, friends, and church.
Passage	I will systematically read and study the Word of God.
Person	I will seek to know God and His will for my life.
Paper	I will journal and write down God given insights.
Pen	I will use my pen to journal and to mark my Bible.
Profit	I will seek to obey God's Word and apply it to my life.

4.5. Living Under Grace

"But by the grace of God I am what I am" – 1 Corinthians 15:10

Think Grace; Apply Grace!

1. I am loved, not because of who I am, but because of Who He is – a God of love (1 John 4:8ff).
2. As to my past life, it does not exist before God: I died with Christ at Calvary, and I am now alive to God in Christ (Romans 6:9-11). My future is glorious because I now share in the life of Christ.
3. I am not on probation: I am not out on parole. I am not in danger of losing my freedom, because freedom is not based upon my performance.
4. Once grace is extended to me, it will not be retracted because of me. God knows all about me. He loves me, not because of Who I am, but because of Who He is – a God of love. Even if I give God my very best, I am still unworthy of His grace. His grace is independent of me, and it is not dependent of what I do or do not do. His grace is not bestowed because of human merit, nor is it withdrawn because of human failure. Otherwise, grace would no longer be grace.
5. My enjoyment of grace is totally dependent on my faith. When I believe, I really enjoy God's grace. When I am humble and consent to be loved, I am enjoying grace; when I am proud and demand a reason to be loved, I am despising grace (Romans 15:13).
6. I must not look within for a reason why God loves me. I must look outside of myself, at Calvary, to discern the reason why God loves me.
7. Because I am enriched by grace, I need to stop trying to do something to earn God's love. The great secret of the Christian life is to allow myself to be loved knowing that I am unworthy of His love.
8. Because I am enriched by God's grace, I have stopped looking inside myself for reasons why God should love me. The deepest theology that I know is that, "Jesus loves me this I know, for the Bible tells me so." I am learning that God's work outside me at Calvary is the reason God loves me. My greatest need is to look at Calvary to understand the height, and length, and depth of God's infinite love, that is, "to know the love of Christ that passes knowledge" (Ephesians 3:19).

4.6. Our Life Goals

Instructions: Jot down some of your wishes and hopes as a couple

Spiritual

Educational

Physical & Recreational

Material (Home)

Occupational

Financial

Family & Children

Church

Christian Service

Retirement

Jurisdiction: God or State?



Do you need a license to get married?

There are two jurisdictions in which couples can marry: (a) God’s law, Common Law, Church Law, or Constitutional law, or (b) State law or statutory law.

People have married for millenniums without permission from the state? In modern times, Americans have seen the rise of Big Government and its intrusion into every area of life. Government even offers couples a marriage license (a tax). In the O.T. era, the only permission a man or women needed to marry

was the permission of the father (Common Law). In the Christian era, clergymen assisted couples to marry under God's law (Common Law).

Couples, therefore, need to determine in what jurisdiction they intend to marry. If you seek Christ, and want to live under His law-order, you will need to create your own contract and find a minister that believes that our Creator-God gave Christ authority and *"put all things under his feet and gave Him to be the head over all thing to the church"* – Ephesians 1:22

State Jurisdiction

If a couple chooses to marry under the laws of the state, they will need a marriage license. The marriage license is really a tax for the privilege having the state be the third party in the marriage. After the wedding ceremony, the marriage license will be signed and registered at the county court house. If a couple marries under state jurisdiction, the marriage is between three parties: husband, wife, and state. When a couple gets a license from the state, the state has authority over the marriage and the children brought into this world. A marriage under state law is honorable, but unnecessary for those who understand the Constitution and know God's Word.

The only way the state can interfere with your marriage is if you give them permission to intervene. The marriage license is your permission slip giving the government authority over your marriage.

Common Law Jurisdiction

"We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness" – the Declaration of Independence.

Common law is God's law or Constitutional law. Common law supersedes statutory law.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof (Amendment I).

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people (Amendment 9).

The Constitution is the "highest law in the land." And, God's Law is supreme above all man-made laws (Acts 5:29). In other words, the Constitution supersedes all statutory laws. Statutory laws are considered "null and void" when they contradict the Constitution.

When a couple marries under God's law, they are choosing to live under Common Law. In church law, the father gives the bride away. A marriage license is not needed. Vows are taken, and the couple signs a marriage contract

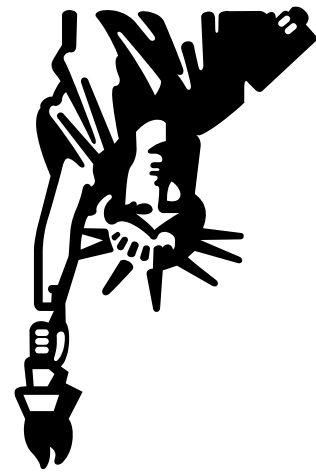
which states they agree to live together as man and wife as opposed to an illicit relationship (Appendix A). They receive a Certificate of Marriage which is then recorded at the county court house (Appendix B). The sexual union consummates marriage, and the couple becomes “one flesh” (God’s Law). In common law jurisdiction, no license is necessary, and the state has no right to interfere with the marriage or with how the couple chooses to raise their children. A Common Law marriage is a legitimate, God honoring, publicly recognized marriage.

Note: you will need to decide in what jurisdiction you want to be married.

Warning: Common law has received a bad rap from the media and the state. The state does not get excited about people marrying under Common Law, and rightly so. They lose money and they lose control.

It is important that you not only understand God’s Law regarding marriage (Genesis 2, Matthew 19, 1 Corinthians 7), but that you understand the primacy of Constitutional Law. If you do not claim your Constitutional right to pursue “life, liberty, and happiness,” the government assumes you have yielded your rights in favor of statutory regulation.

Unfortunately, you have to assert your rights to enjoy them. If you choose to marry under state law, you are yielding your rights to the government. If you choose to marry under God’s Law, you are asserting your Constitutional rights.



4.7. Solid Ancient Principles

*“And the LORD God formed (**rc,yYlw:**) man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul” - Genesis 2:7*

1. **Uniqueness:** When God “formed” (**ya asar**) man, man was God’s premier creative act. Notice the two *yods* (**yYl**) in the Hebrew. Hebrew words never begin with two identical letters. The rabbis saw the extra *yod* as a matter of emphasis. Some believe it to represent man’s potential for good and evil, a *yat sar ra*, and his potential for good, a *ya sar tov*. Possibly, it represents equality,

that both the male and female are special products of God's creation . . . or the extra power God asserted in creating man.

2. **Headship:** God created Adam first, and Eve second. The order of creation determines authority (1Corinthians 11:3; 1 Timothy 2:11-15). Headship is not bestowed because of talent or skill, but by Divine prerogative.

3. **Equality:** Both man and woman were made in the image of God (Genesis 1:27). When Adam met Eve, he called her "woman" (1:23). The similarity in sound between the word man (*ish*) and woman (*isha*) implies equality in capacity, but not equality in authority.

4. **Perquisites for marriage:** Before Adam married Eve, he knew his purpose (2:15), God's moral law (2:16-17), and his need for a mate (2:19-20). We conclude that before a man marries he needs to know his purpose in life, God's moral law, and see his need for a wife. What man is qualified to marry if he (a) does not know his life purpose, (b) does not know the Word of God, and (c) has not seen his need for a helpmeet?

5. **Purpose of Marriage:** When God finished his creation, He said, "Behold, it is good" (*tov*). When Adam was alone, God said, "It is not good" (*lo tov*). The rabbis taught that singleness was not God's normal plan for a man, and that it is God's will for men to marry.

To resolve man's loneliness problem, God purposed in His own mind to create a "helpmeet" (*ezer*) "suitable" (*nagad*) for him. The word helpmeet means "helper," and the word suitable means "to the side of." Eve's purpose is found in helping her husband with his life purpose. Some have suggested Eve was not taken out of Adam's skull to rule over him, or out of his foot to be under him, but from his side to share life with him. We conclude the purpose of marriage is companionship.

6. **Relationship:** Why did God create Adam first and Eve second? And, why did God put Adam to sleep when He created Eve? God is God and He could have performed a painless operation while Adam was awake? We believe Adam's solitary creation was installed to give Adam time to get acquainted with his Creator before he met his wife. Likewise, Eve needed time to get to know her Creator, before she met her husband. We conclude successful marriages are the result of dynamic, individual relationship with God. Marriage was not designed for total fulfillment in life. Our needs are infinite, and only through a relationship with the Creator can a man or a woman find total satisfaction in life.

7. **Origin of Marriage:** It was God who ordained and established the institution of marriage. Marriage is not defined by man's laws or man's opinions or by governmental statutes. Common law or God's law authorized

the first marriage. Leaving and cleaving were the necessary elements of a this union.

8. **Definition of Marriage:** Marriage is not two people living under the same roof. Marriage is not two people who form an economic partnership. Marriage cannot happen between two men. Marriage is a life commitment exclusively between a man (male) and a woman (female) who agree to be man and wife in covenant relationship and which is consummated thorough sexual union. In the beginning, He created Adam and Eve, not Adam and Steve.

9. **Nakedness (nudity):** Marriage demands nakedness to be successful, that is, a relationship based on trust. The first couple's nudity symbolized perfect trust (2:25). After the fall and sin entered the world, marital harmony and it needed to be repaired. We conclude that nakedness, that is, trust and integrity are the two essentials necessary for a successful marriage.

10. **The Broken Relationship:** After the fall (Genesis 3), we see at least four joy robbers that entered this relationship: shame (3:7), guilt (3:8), fear (3:10) and blame (3:12). We conclude that shame, guilt, fear, and blame shifting are products of disobedience to God and must be judged accordingly if a marriage is to experience joy and happiness.

11. **Grace:** In order to resolve shame, guilt, fear, and blame, God slew a clean animal and covered the first couple's nakedness. It was the shed blood of the sacrifice that resolved the relational crisis between God and man, and between the man and the woman. We conclude that all successful relationships need to appropriate grace and forgiveness into the marriage for joy and happiness.

4.8. Leave, Cleave, and Weave

"Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh" – Genesis 2:24



This is the theme of our marriage counseling course. **Leave, cleave, and weave** represent the maxim, method, and meaning of marriage. Great marriages build on the solid rock of God's principles, and failed marriages lack them. These principles are simple, but basic to the success of your marriage. Know them.

Leave

God is the One who instituted marriage, and he is the One who has set the rules for its efficient operation. One of the mandates set down by the Lord is that you

must leave your fathers' house and establish your own home. You must leave physically, find a home of your own, and live under your own roof. You must leave emotionally. This is difficult. Making the emotional break from the warmth of your father's home is like severing the umbilical of a newborn infant from its mother, but it has to be done. You must leave financially. You are not truly independent until you can fully support yourselves, but it is a part of leaving.

Cleave

Another rule is that you must cleave to each other: physically, emotionally, and financially. Cleaving begins with emotional bonding, and is consummated through sexual intercourse. There will be many challenges in the marriage that test this marriage bond. Financial pressure, disagreement, opportunity for extra-marital affairs will abound. But in all and through all you must learn to cleave to each other like Velcro.

Weave

The goal of marriage is oneness or completeness. How God takes two different individuals and makes them one is a mystery. Marriage is a spinning process where God takes two different fibers and weaves them into a beautiful fabric. Throw in lots of love, a few trials, a little spice and mix them together and God can stitch a prize of grace. At times your lives may look like the underside of needlework, but in his eyes He is embroidering something beautiful. The key is to submit to God's weaving process, to appreciate your differences, and to accentuate your strengths.

Children

Lo, children are an heritage of the LORD: and the fruit of the womb is his reward. As arrows are in the hand of a mighty man; so are children of the youth. As arrows are in the hand of a mighty man; so are children of the youth. Happy is the man that hath his quiver full of them: they shall not be ashamed, but they shall speak with the enemies in the gate. (Psalm 127:3-5).

Today, many couples are deciding not to have children. Children are called "rug rats," "budget busters," and at best, "a tax deduction."

The Hebrews, on the other hand, had a very positive view of children. The word "Lo" is the Hebrew word *hinneh* which means, "Stop and behold." So important is what follows that the writer of the psalm says, "Stop and look at this!" Take a look at the three descriptions of children in this psalm.

First, Children are said to be "a heritage of the Lord." The word "heritage" means "a possession." Children are a possession given to parents from God. Children are not just products of nature. They are not accidents of human

reproduction. Children are a gift from God to increase the joy and happiness of parents.

Second, children are called a “reward.” The word reward is translated “wages” in several places. A wage is a positive benefit to any family. Children are not a deduction or a liability. They are a wage, a benefit, an asset to the family.

Third, children are called “arrows.” Arrows are instruments of war designed to strike a blow at the enemy. An arrow is used as a weapon when an army can advance no further. There is a time when a man’s energies will fail and he has to retire from serving Christ. A mighty man, however, can strike a decisive blow against the enemy by hurling arrows in the battle of life. It was David, the son of Jesse, who killed Goliath and subjected the Philistines to Israel. Under the hand of a mighty man (*gi bor*—a term for courage and strength), children can become instruments of service for Christ, a positive force for good in gospel proclamation.

The conclusion the psalmist wants us to understand is that children bring happiness into the family: “Happy is the man that has his quiver full . . .” But, what is a full quiver? Quivers varied in size, depending on the industriousness of the man. Every couple will have to decide the size of their quiver. Regardless of the size, however, children in the hands of a mighty man will be a source of blessing and joy because they are a heritage and a reward and an instrument of war.

4.9. Know Your Rights

The Unalienable Right to Marry apart from the State.

Matthew 19:4-6 And he answered and said unto them, Have ye not read, that he which made *them* at the beginning made them male and female, ⁵ And said, For this cause shall a man leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife: and they twain shall be one flesh? ⁶ Wherefore they are no more twain, but one flesh. What therefore God hath joined together, let not man put asunder.

We hold these Truths to be self-evident, that all Men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness (The Declaration of Independence).

Unlimited Right to Contract: No State shall . . . pass any Bill of Attainder, ex post facto Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of

Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility. (United States Constitution, Article 1, Section 10).

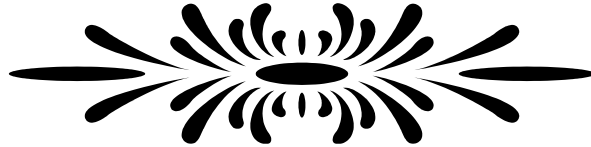
Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof . . . (Bill of Rights, Amendment I).

*"The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people"
(Amendment IX, Bill of Rights).*

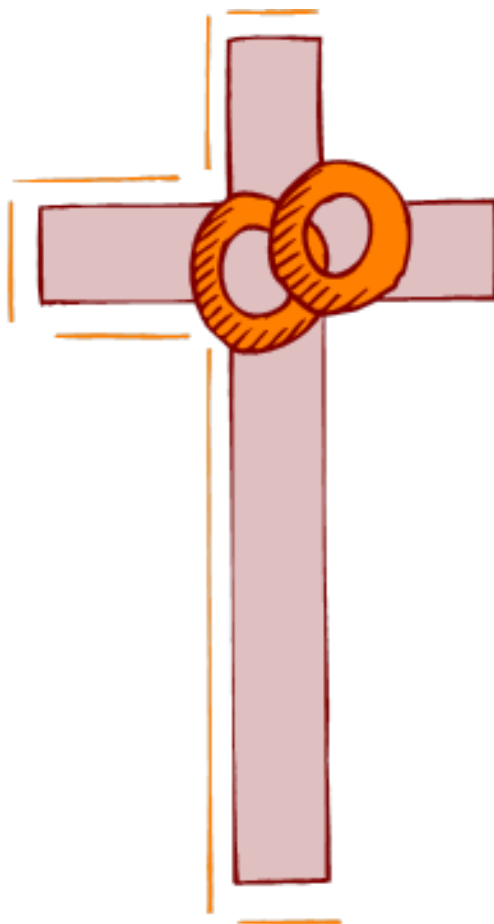
Fundamentally, it can be said that whoever recognizes the elements and definition of marriage determines its validity within society.

Know God's law; Know the limitations of government; Know your rights!

Your marriage is your private agreement. Kick the government out of your bedroom.



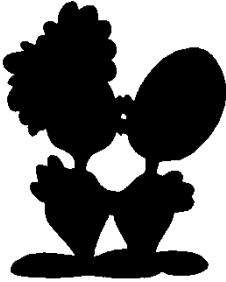
5. The Model for Marriage



“Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord. Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for I” - Ephesians 5 22-25.

“But I would have you know, that the head of every man is Christ; and the head of the woman is the man; and the head of Christ is Go” 1 Corinthians 11:3

5.1. Adam's Rib



Adam: "This is a perfect spot for a picnic."

Eve: "It sure is. Fifty million ants can't be wrong."

Anytime you see a man open the car for a girlfriend you must come to one of two conclusions: Either the car is new, or the girlfriend is.

Nervous Mother to the Father: "The most awful thing in the world has happened. Our daughter while away at college has fallen in love with a foreigner."

"How do you know?" he asked.

"Listen as I read you her letter," she said.

Mother reading the letter: "I have fallen in love with Ping Pong."

Romeo: "Say, gorgeous, what's your telephone number?"

Julie: "Look it up. It's in the book."

Romeo: "So, what's your name?"

Julie: "Look it up. It's in the book, too."

Daughter: "What kind of husband do you advise me to get?"

Mother: "Single. Let the husbands alone."

She: "Honey, please forgive me for being so angry with you last week."

He: "That's O.K. I saved about \$50 during our cold war."

Mable: "What's that dumb husband of yours up to now?"

Heather: "He not dumb. He's working on a new invention. It's called colored radio."

Did you hear about the husband that was under-fed, under-nourished, and over-wifed?

Did you hear about the man who went to the library to look for a book called, "Man; the Master of his Home?" Well, the librarian finally found it in the fiction department.

Wife during argument: "O.K. I'll meet you half way. I will admit that I'm right if you will admit that you are wrong.

Husband: "Look woman. I'm big, your small. I'm smart, your dumb. I'm right, you are wrong."

5.2. Role Concept Comparison

What do you believe about your roles in marriage?

Agree Disagree

- ___ ___ 1. The husband should be the undisputable head of the home.
- ___ ___ 2. The wife should not be employed outside of the home.
- ___ ___ 3. It is healthy to have a marriage based on democratic principles.
- ___ ___ 4. The wife has the greater responsibility for the children.
- ___ ___ 5. Money that the wife earns belongs to the husband also.
- ___ ___ 6. It is O.K. to send our children to public schools.
- ___ ___ 7. The husband should be the primary breadwinner.
- ___ ___ 8. Money can best be handled through a joint checking account.
- ___ ___ 9. Marriage is a 50-50 proposition.
- ___ ___ 10. Men must learn to love their wives so their wives can learn to submit.
- ___ ___ 11. A couple should spend their leisure activities with one another.
- ___ ___ 12. It is not right for the wife to initiate lovemaking.
- ___ ___ 13. Children should be allowed to help plan family activities.

- ___ ___ 14. Mutual consent should be gained before purchasing an item over \$100.
- ___ ___ 15. Spanking children has no place in a Christian marriage.
- ___ ___ 16. Women are more emotional than men; men are more rational.
- ___ ___ 17. A wife should not make more money than her husband.
- ___ ___ 18. Arguments are out of place in marriage.
- ___ ___ 19. The husband should take his wife out somewhere twice a month.
- ___ ___ 20. The wife should not have the job of disciplining the children.

5.3. The Biblical Model for Marriage

Ephesians 5:22-32



Instruction for Wives

22 Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord.

32 . . . And the wife see that she reverence her husband.

Instructions for Husbands

23 For the husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the church: and

he is the savior of the body.

24 Therefore as the church is subject unto Christ, so let the wives be to their own husbands in everything.

25 Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for it;

26 That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word,

27 That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish.

29 For no man ever yet hated his own flesh; but nourisheth and cherisheth it, even as the Lord the church:

30 For we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones.

31 For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.

32 This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church.

33 Nevertheless let every one of you in particular so love his wife even as himself; and the wife see that she reverence her husband.

Bible Study Questions

1. What does the word "head" mean? Why is this such a powerful term?
2. What is the God given authority of the husband in the home?
3. What does the word "submission" (*hupotasso*) mean? What does it infer?
4. What does the word "reverence" mean? What is the opposite of reverence?
5. Why is a woman's lack of submission and lack of reverence the primary cause of so many divorces.
6. Why can't a man lead an unruly and critical wife?
7. How is God's instruction to women so counter-culture?
8. What is the devastating effect of radical feminism upon a marriage?
9. How did Eve undermine Adam's headship in Genesis 3?
10. What affect did sin entering the world have upon all women?
11. Solomon warn His son about the "strange woman" (Proverbs 2:16), the "angry and contentious woman" (21:9), and the "odious woman" (30:23) about contentious women?
12. What is a strange woman? A stranger to what?
13. What is a "contentious woman?" Why can't the best of men live with in the same house with a "brawling" woman?
14. What is an "odious woman?" Why is the whole world disquieted by her? Can you think of some odious women in the Bible?
15. What does the strange woman, the contentious woman, and the odious woman have in common?
16. In this age of feminism, how can a woman keep from being a strange, contentious, odious woman? (Proverbs 1:7; 30:31).
17. If a ring is a symbol that a woman is married, what is the sign that a woman fears the Lord and acknowledges his law order (1 Corinthians 11:10)?

18. Paul's orders older women to teach younger women (a) to love their husbands and to obey them. What weakness in young women is Paul addressing? (Titus 2:4-5)
19. What three things does every man need from a wife to be a happy husband?
20. What does the word "love / agape" mean in Ephesians 5:25.
21. What is the man's model for love?
22. As a loving Savior, what is He doing for his church today (5:27).
23. Q for husbands: Will your wife be better off because she married you than someone else?
24. What two ways does the Spirit exhort men to love and lead their wives in this passage?
25. What is in man's nature (Adam's nature) that is a hindrance to being this kind of husband?
26. What is going to keep you (young man) from repeating Adam's sin of acquiescing to your wife?
27. What is the key to fulfilling your duty as a husband (Ephesians 5:18)?
28. Why does the Spirit address the wife's responsibilities first before He addresses the husband's responsibilities?
29. Why is a husband's love not the grounds of a wife's submission to her husband? (5:23)

5.4. Biblical Love

1 Corinthians 13

What insights do you have about agape love (Corinthians 13:1-8)?

Love is patient,

Love is kind.

It does not envy,

It does not boast,



It is not proud.

It is not rude,

It is not self-seeking,

It is not easily angered,

It keeps no record of wrongs.

Love does not delight in evil but rejoices with the truth.

It always protects,

Always trusts,

Always hopes,

Always perseveres.

Love never fails

Q: When you fail to love your Spouse as you should, what are you going to do?

Women Only

1. What is your primary love language? Time? Listening? Gifts? Touch? Honor?
2. What do you want your husband to know about loving you? What should he do and not do?
3. What is your husband's love language? Touch? Listening? Gifts? Time?
4. What little things can you do to show respect to your husband?

Men Only

5. What is your primary love language? Time? Listening? Gifts? Touch? Honor?
6. What do you want your wife to know about respecting you and your God given authority? What should she do and not do in the respect department?
7. What is your wife's love language? Touch? Listening? Gifts? Time?
8. What little things can you do to love and honor her?

5.5. Marriage Challenges

Questions for Problems Situations: Choose two or three of the following hypothetical situations and work through to an agreed-upon solution. Define the roles and rules of your relationship.



1. Husband: If you are neglecting your duty around the house, how can your wife address your "neglects" without making you angry and defensive?

2. Wife: Let's say you disagree about a "purchase" your husband is about to make. How are you going to express your difference without being a nag and/or being a doormat?

3. The husband is the head of the home. In what areas of your home will the wife have jurisdiction, and in what areas will the husband have jurisdiction? How is this leadership/submission principle going to work here?

4. Take the following chores and decide who is going to do them.

cooking	dishes	shopping	clearing table
vacuuming	watering plants	windows	car cleaned
empty trash	balance checkbook	pay bills	water lawn
purchase car	purchase furniture	purchase tools	tithe wash clothes
ironing	write letters	keep records	others_____

5. Wife: If you have expressed a disagreement to your husband and then he goes out and does something "stupid" (that's the way you will feel, of course) and it backfires, what is going to keep you from attacking your "jerk" husband? What attitudes and principles are going draw upon to keep you from coming back to him saying, "I told you so . . ." (I Peter 3: 1-6)?

6. Husband: You are the head of the home. How do you want your wife to approach you when she disagrees with you?

7. Husband: If your wife flat disagrees with a decision of yours, what are you going to do?

8. Wife: If your husband asks you to do something against your conscience, what are you going to do?

9. Wife: In your opinion, what part of submission will be the biggest challenge for you?

11. In your opinion what is the relationship of love to money, things, and clothing?

Four Magic Words

There are four magic words that if understood and applied will make for smooth sailing on the sea of matrimony. If problems arise in a marriage, one or more of these magic words is not being applied.

For Wives (Ephesians 5:22, 33)

Submission (*hupotasso*): *Hupotasso* is the Greek word for submission. It is a military term meaning “to arrange yourself” under a superior. Though *hupotasso* is a military term, it has a relational context. God, not the husband, has commanded women to arrange themselves under their husbands, to recognize their superior position, and to serve his leadership. Submission does not imply inferiority, but it does intimate activating a spirit of servanthood, obedience, and meekness.

Respect (*phobeo*): *Phobeo* is the Greek word for “fear,” “reverence,” or “respect.” The proper response to God appointed authority is respect, even fear. Though a man is not always worthy of respect, the wife should always respect the position of her husband. A wife who debates, challenges, and criticizes her man needs to grow in respect. The spirit of respect should be reflected in a woman’s words, tone, and demeanor. It is much easier for a man to lead a respectful wife.

For Husbands (Ephesians 5:25; 1 Peter 3:7)

As God has a will for the wife, He has a will for the husband.

Love (*agapao*): The Greek word *agape* is the word used to describe God’s love. *Agape* is God’s unconditional, gracious, beneficent love that sacrificed His Son for sinners. The nature of *agape* is self-sacrifice for the good of others. God is calling the man to a life of *agape*—to lead the home through self-sacrifice. God does not command the man to love his wife because she is always lovely, but because love is the law of God’s kingdom. It is not difficult for a wife to submit and to respect a man who does everything out of love.

Honor (*tima*): The Greek word *tima* (tee-may) means “to honor,” or “to make room,” or “to give weight.” Simply put, *tima* means, “to listen” to one’s wife and “to make room” for her wishes, and “to give weight” to her opinions. It is God’s will that the man know his wife (“dwell according to knowledge”) and carefully consider what she says. It is easier to respect a man who listens.

If the husband is the king of the home and the wife is the queen of the home how should a wife treat the king? How does a king treat the queen?

5.6. Submission in the Home

"Wives be subject you your husbands . . . "

1. Submission is not a bad word. It is a good word meaning "strength under control." Teams do not win games and horses do not win races without submission.
2. Submission means respect, that is, I must respect the authority of my husband and his position in the home. He has a right to lead and govern the home as he sees best.
3. Submission does not mean I am inferior to my husband. Submission is the role God assigned to me in order to make our family successful. When I work within the framework of God's design, the beauty of his plans unfolds for us.
4. Submission does not mean I cannot lead or initiate change. It is the way I lead that makes a difference. I must learn to lead by persuasion, not by emotional power.
5. Submission does not mean I cannot disagree with my husband. It is what I do at the end of our disagreement that counts. It would be wrong for me to buck, nag, and badger him after I have stated my case, or after he makes a decision I do not like.
6. Submission is not an admission of failure. Submission means that I give my man the freedom to fail. I am trusting God to lead my imperfect husband, and if I feel he is on the wrong track, I will trust God to get him back on the right track.
7. Submission does not mean I cannot have an opinion. As a fellow team member, my husband should consider my opinion. If I disagree, it is my duty to persuade him with reason. If he still disagrees, I must learn to accept his decisions. He has a right to make the final decision. We both get a vote in our family. If we are tied, my husband always gets a second vote. He may make mistakes, but I am convinced God will teach him to carefully consider my opinion on matters.
8. Submission is the way of wisdom, but it does not mean the head of the home is always wise. He will make mistakes, and when he does, I will be there to comfort and help him.



Submission does not mean that my husband is always right, he is not. He will fail. But he will fail less often if he knows he has a supportive wife that is depending on him for good leadership.

5.7. Leadership in the Home

"Have we not power . . . to lead a wife" - 1 Corinthians 9:5

Many pastors would agree that a man's biggest challenge is to lead and not run from responsibility.

9. Leadership is not determined by gift and ability, but by sex. God ordained that every Christian man should be the head and leader of His home. Headship must never be surrendered to the wife. The Lord approves neither democracy nor authoritarianism. He ordained loving, authoritative male leadership in the home.

10. Leadership is not a title. It is a role: As the husband, I am the God-appointed head of our home. Being head of my home is not just a position I hold, but a role I accept to make our family successful.

11. Leadership is not just serving my family, but serving God's purpose for my family. The goal is not to get the will of the kids done in the home, but to get the will of God done in the home. If I am "wife-centered" or "child-centered" or "job-centered," I will sail our ship into rough waters.



12. Leadership is not just spiritual or material. It is both. As head of the home, I must relate to heaven, but I must also relate to money, chores, dirty diapers and leaky faucets. I cannot divide the spiritual from the material.

13. Leadership is not just commanding, but listening. I know that my first duty is to listen to the advice of my wife. I must learn to carefully consider what she says and what she means by what she says. If I go against her advice, I need to explain to her what I am doing and why. I must accept responsibility for my decisions and never blame my wife. God holds me responsible for the direction of this family, not her. Furthermore, because she supports me, she will always receive the credit for our successes.

14. Leadership is not telling, but showing. If I want to have a successful marriage, I must learn to imitate Christ in my home. I want to be the best husband and father that ever lived. Anything less is compromise. My goal is for my wife to say of me, "I have had the privilege of living with a true man of God. He was not perfect, but he knew how to truly love me." This means I must learn to love my wife as Christ loved the church. God loves me because of Who He is, not because of what I do. I, therefore, must learn to love from my character, not from what others do or do not do. By God's grace and with His help, I will lead my family into a life of love.

5.8. Proverbs 32 for Men

By Jo Ann Stockton published in Interest Magazine

Who can find a faithful man?

His value is worth more than all the stocks and bonds in Wall Street.

The heart of his wife desires to make him happy, because he tries to fulfill her needs and wants even above his own.

He will do her good and not dwell on her shortcomings all the days of his life.

He is out in the business world only to provide the best he can for his family.

He rises from his knees after starting the day in intercession for his loved ones, friends, and associates.

He provides spiritual and physical food for his family on a daily basis, and makes it fun to learn from Dad.

He consider business transactions and makes wise investments.

With the fruit of his labor, he saves for the future.

He is strong in spirit because he allows God to have full reign in his life, and strong in his body because he regularly exercises and takes care of it.

He perceives that the way he handles his family, his time, and his life is a glory of God.

And the direction he is taking gives him great confidence and peace.

He puts his hands on rakes and shovels, and his arms often push the lawnmower.

He is touched to give to the poor and the homeless, and gets personally involved with the social issues of the day.

He is not anxious about hard times ahead, for he has clothed his household with insurance, retirement plans, wills, funeral arrangements, and a preparation for eternal life.

He likes to relax by making things in his workshop.

He has hobbies that enrich his life.

His reputation in his walk with the Lord is above reproach.

He is well-known and highly respected in the community.

He is a good steward of everything he buys and sells,
and he delivers a quality product to his satisfied customers.

Strength and integrity clothe him, and he rejoices in his hope about the future.

He speaks with discerning wisdom, and his words are a well of life.

He is always looking for ways to be a better husband and father, and is a hard worker (but not a "workaholic"). His children have a firm walk with God,

and they stand up and lovingly extol their father; His wife does the same, and she praises him.

"Many men have done very well, but you are the cream of the crop!"

Fame and fortune are deceitful and dashing good looks are vain, but a man that submits to Christ as his Lord is to be praised. Give him his eternal rewards and let the ones he led to the Lord receive him at the pearly gates.

Lesson seven

6. Walk and Talk

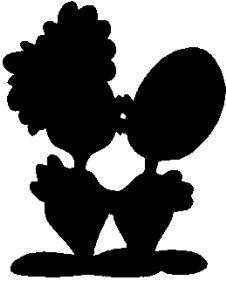
A Study on

Communications in Marriage



The tongue has the power of life and death . . .” - Proverbs 18:21

6.1. Adam's Rib



Groomie: "What are we having for dessert tonight dear?"

Bridie: "Sponge cake. I sponged the eggs from Mrs. Brown, the flower from Mrs. Carpenter, and the milk from Mrs. Smith."

Did you hear about the cowboy husband that was very quick on the flaw?

A boring male date is one who opens his mouth and puts his feet in.

Did you hear about the couple who had a big fight? Well, they finally got things patched up: his nose, his jaw, and his head.

Jill: "I understand that you have been married four times."

Jan: "Yes, that is true: once to a millionaire, once to an actor, another time to a preacher, and now I'm married to a mortician."

Jill: "But why?"

Jan: "I married one for the money, two for the show, three to get ready, and four to go."

Pill: "Daisy could have married anybody she pleased."

Gill: "Then why didn't she get married?"

Pill: "She never pleased anybody."

Boy: "I saw Sam the other day treating his wife the way I wouldn't treat my dog."

Girl: "How is that?"

Boy: "Kissing her."

Judge: "And, what is your complaint, Madam?"

Miffed: "I want a divorce."

Judge: "Does he beat you?"

Miffed: "No, I win at cards every time."

Judge: "Does he have a grudge?"

Miffed: "Yes, he has a two car garage."

Judge: "What I mean is, do you have any grounds for a divorce?"

Miffed: "Yes, we have two acres outside of town."

Judge: "Madam, why do you want a divorce?"

Miffed: "Because my husband can't communicate."

6.2. Agree-Disagree?

Agree Disagree

- ___ ___ 1. A wife should not submit to a husband who is out of the will of God.
- ___ ___ 2. Anger is a sign of being out of the Spirit.
- ___ ___ 3 One should always forgive their mate after a wrong done.
- ___ ___ 4. It is always wrong for a wife to criticize her husband to others.
- ___ ___ 5. It doesn't matter what you say, as long as you say it lovingly.
- ___ ___ 6. A husband and wife should have no secrets.
- ___ ___ 7. A person should say what they feel when they are married.
- ___ ___ 8. The husband is responsible for bad decisions made in the family.
- ___ ___ 9. A wife should do what her husband wants sexually.
- ___ ___ 10. One should not be totally honest about his feelings in marriage.
- ___ ___ 11. Silence may be an escape from settling angry feelings.
- ___ ___ 12. A wife should not try to change her husband after they are married.
- ___ ___ 13. A good wife will remind her husband of unfulfilled responsibilities.

- ___ ___ 14. Communications must be open before sex can be enjoyed.
- ___ ___ 15. One should always ask for forgiveness when he errs.
- ___ ___ 16. Peace is the goal of communication.
- ___ ___ 17. You have rights that your mate must respect.
- ___ ___ 18. Venting anger is good for people.
- ___ ___ 19. Spouses should tell each other when they are angry.
- ___ ___ 20. It is inappropriate to tell your mate of things you dislike.
- ___ ___ 21. Forgiving means that I must give up my pain and hurt.
- ___ ___ 22. It is all right for a wife to give advice to her husband.
- ___ ___ 23. A wife has an obligation to obey her husband when he is wrong.
- ___ ___ 24. Revealing anger is a sign of weakness.
- ___ ___ 25. Reading romance novels can help a couple's sexual life.



6.3. Just for Fun

	His	Hers
1. My favorite dessert is	-----	-----
2. The food I hate the most is	-----	-----
3. My favorite TV program is	-----	-----
4. My favorite Bible verse is	-----	-----
5. I have always wanted to be a	-----	-----
6. My favorite date was when	-----	-----
7. My most fearful experience was	-----	-----
8. I have always wanted to visit	-----	-----
9. My worst habit is	-----	-----
10. I loved my Dad most because he	-----	-----

11. My proudest moment in life was _____
12. I wish my fiancée would not _____
13. I would like to change _____
14. I look best in (wardrobe) _____
15. Sometimes I wish my fiancée would _____
16. I want our bedroom this color _____
17. What I like most about our church is _____
18. My saddest moment in life was when _____
19. The best part of me is _____
20. I hope that you never stop _____

* Note: the basis of this course is "What does the Bible say." Our authority for all things is the Word of God. We put no confidence in psychology or the words of worldly wise men.

6.4. Lessons from the World's Wisest Men

"Death and life are in the power of the tongue: and they that love it shall eat the fruit thereof." - Proverbs 18:21

Define the term "communication" - What hinders communication according to Solomon? (Book of Proverbs)

12:16

12:18

18:13

29: 22

1. What conditions are necessary for efficient communication according to Solomon?

14:25

15:1

15:30

15:31

16:24

17:27, 28

2. What are the signs that communication is broken?

10:19

15:4

18:19

3. How can a couple restore broken communications?

28:13, 14

28:23

Matthew 7:1-4

4. What do tones have to do with communication?

5. In your opinion, how will walking in love facilitate good communication (1 Corinthians 13:1-8)?

6.5. Communication Challenge

1. Look at the following questions and then discuss them together. Discuss your feelings carefully but candidly.
2. Husband: Honey, if you could change one thing about me, what would it be? I promise to listen and to carefully consider what you say.
3. Wife: Honey, if you could change one thing about me, what would it be? I promise to listen and to carefully consider what you say.
4. What is your primary love language? Touch? Listening? Time? Gifts?

5. How do you personally handle anger? Blow up or clam up?
6. You made me angry when . . .
7. When I am hurt, I usually . . .
8. When accused of a wrong, I usually respond by . . .
9. How do you say, "I am wrong"? How do you say, "Honey, I forgive you?"
10. When I hurt you, please . . .
11. When I say, "Honey, will you forgive me?" I am asking you to . . .
12. When I say, "Honey, I forgive you," I mean . . .
13. If we are having a problem in our marriage, let us follow the following steps:
 - A.
 - B.
 - C.

6.6. Tools of Communication



Are you a good communicator? Like a two-way radio, communication requires a transmitter and a receiver, a talker and a listener. In marriage you need both. Communication takes skill and you can develop it by learning to use these tools.

THE HEARING TOOL: In I John 5: 14 the aged apostle says that "God hears us." But, are we seeking to become like Him in his hearing? Do we hear what our spouse is really saying? What do the tones and inflection of the voice mean? Do we hear the sounds of a troubled heart as well as the sounds of a happy one? Successful marriages depend on the ability to hear.

THE SEEING TOOL: A lonely and dejected woman noted of the Lord, "You are the God who sees me" (Genes 16:13). Do we want to be like Christ in His seeing? God saw Hagar in her weakest moment. The Word of God strengthened

her. What do we see when we are with our spouse? Can we see hurt, disappointment, or yearning?

THE TOUCHING TOOL: "Jesus had compassion on them and touched . . ." (Matthew 20:24). Do we want to be like Christ in the compassion of touching? I believe that Jesus was a hugger. Don't you? A hug, fingers running through the hair, or a kiss on the cheek are the little ways that couples say, "I'm glad you're here." A touch can say, "I love you." It can express, "I need your love."

THE WORD TOOL: Jesus is called "the Word" (John 1:1). He is God's communication to us. We too must learn to communicate, and the most useful mechanism is the power of words. Words are not neutral. They have the power of "life and death" (Proverbs 18:21). James tells us they are like sparks that can start fires, and are like rudders that turn tons of steel and metal. Words are the most misused tool. By words our marriage will become a joy or a distress.

THE FRAGRANCE TOOL: "All your robes are fragrant . . ." (Psalm 45:8). When crushed at the cross, Christ emanated forgiveness: "Father forgive them . . ." What spills out when we are bumped: anger or kindness? What do we communicate when people mistreat us? In order to communicate the "fragrance of Christ," one must be filled with the Spirit of God--a personal resource no marriage can do without.

6.7. Levels of Communication



The goal of marriage is to build trust so that communication can progress to a more insightful and satisfying experience. True communication requires a risk and a deeper level of trust. Notice how the risk increases and how much more trust is needed as one plunges into the deeper levels of sharing.



LEVEL 5: SMALL TALK

Questions like "How are you?", "What's new?", and "How are things going?" are surface queries designed to interrupt silence and avoid social embarrassment.

Conversations that remain on this level are boring and lead to frustration in marriage.

LEVEL 4: FACT REPORTING

At this level, information is shared, but personal opinions and feelings about the facts are kept secret. For example: A wife may ask her husband where he is going after dinner, and he may simply respond, "Out!" The word "out" does not communicate where he is going, or why he is going.

LEVEL 3: IDEAS AND OPINIONS

Intimacy begins here. On this level you are exposing your inner thoughts, feelings, and opinions. Your soul is exposed, and your partner has a chance to know the real you. There is a risk, however, that your partner may not like your ideas and opinions. You are vulnerable. This is why intimacy is based on trust and integrity. Can your partner trust you with their feelings?

LEVEL 2: FEELINGS AND EMOTIONS

This level requires real honesty about the feelings of anger, resentment, joy, and frustrations. Couples who are really able to share their true feelings about issues have built up a level of trust. They feel safe exposing their most intimate feelings with their spouse. Rich relationships are able to plunge into this level of communication and come up with pearls of insight about their partner.

LEVEL 1: DEEP INSIGHT

Rare insightful moments will occur when you are perfectly in tune with your mate's emotions and opinions. A glance across the room, a mischievous smile says it all. This ability to mutually share personal ideas, opinions, and responses greatly enrich the relationship. This level takes the greatest amount of trust and involves the greatest risk.

6.8. Levels of Conflict in Marriage

An article in Family Dynamics, a professional journal, presented the



following model for identifying levels of marital conflict.

Level I

Conflict occurs when there are problems to solve based on real differences. The individuals perceive that their goals or values are in conflict. Even though they recognize common interests and employ open communication, the couple imagines that better communication will produce the solutions they need. The relationship itself is not generally in danger. The need is clear and patient communication.

The dangers at this level is impatience or from adhering to only one style of conflict resolution. Flexibility is needed. At this level, the need is for a deeper walk with God and a concerted effort to be patient. Inadequate problem-solving skills escalate conflict to the next level.

Level II

Hurt enters the relationship. The couple accurately perceives that their relationship is in danger. Trust is withdrawn. Hope is weak. Disagreements are common. They feel the need to compromise, but find themselves focusing on self-protection and personal rights. Communication is cautious, vague, and evasive. A marriage counselor is needed. Confession and repentance can ease the pain. At this level, there is a need to go deeper into God's Word and deeper into Christ.

Level III

Fear, frustration, resentment, blame, and anger characterize level III. Issues are stockpiled so that anger erupts easily over trivial matters. A typical complaint is, "Every time we disagree, it turns into a big fight." Each party feels the only solution is to get the other person to change. Every comment, no matter how harmless, has the potential to be perceived as an insult or accusation. Genuine communication is lacking. Discussions are littered with distortion of the facts and an abundance of accusation. Marriage counseling can still be effective, but requires careful structuring and sensitivity. Each must seriously concentrate on their own walk with God.

Level IV

Conflict goes beyond the power struggles of level III. Defeating the partner is more important than following principle. Winning is the most important issue in this relational war. The emotional climate is one of alienation, antagonism,

and pessimism. Each partner is convinced the other will never change, and even if one attempts to change, the other is accused of having evil motives. These couples often deny and cover up their relationship problems. Sooner or later, troubles bubble up and spill over into other relationships. Since marriage counseling is often not requested, the conflict is projected into the next generation through the children. If divorce does occur, it is likely to be "messy."

Repentance is not too late, but it needs to be real and thorough.

Level V

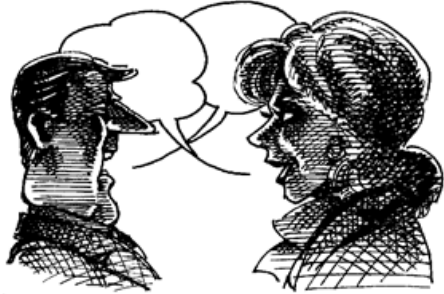
This level is war. Violence is common. Anxiety fills the home. Each sees the other as a threat to personal security. The spouse is viewed as an enemy that needs to be defeated and eliminated. Ugly words are exchanged. The emotional climate is characterized by volatility and rage. Hopelessness dominates convictions. Neither has a remedy or want a solution. The couple is trapped in a battle from which they cannot retreat. At this level, marriage counseling is inappropriate. Intervention is necessary. Mandatory separation, safe houses, and personal restructuring may be needed. After the individuals become functional and are in control of their own lives, they may or may not decide to attempt a reconstruction of their marriage. Deep, deep individual repentance is the only solution.

In talking to couples headed for divorce, couples left me with the impression that their partner was a witch or a jerk. No man marries a witch, but I am convinced an unloving man can contribute to a woman's ugliness. Likewise, no woman marries a jerk. But, I am convinced a self-willed woman can contribute to turning a man into a jerk.

It cannot be emphasized too strongly the need for a personal walk with God. Peace and joy reign in Christ-centered heart. War and anger dominate in self-centered homes. If a couple will study God's Word and obey it, the marriage will not only be a source of joy, but an agent of healing to unhealthy marriages.

6.9. Why Communication is so Difficult?

Communication involves an interchange of ideas, feelings, and thoughts. It is not like a ping-pong match where the ball is simply hit back across the net. It is more like trying to ping-pong with a snow ball. Something is lost in the interchange. Communication sent is not always the communication received.



Let us illustrate the point:

As a **SENDER** there is what you want to say; there is what you actually say; and, there is what you think that you said.

As a **RECEIVER** there is something that you want to hear; what you actually hear; and what you think you heard.

No wonder we have problems communicating! It is as difficult as playing ping-pong with a snowball.

Communication is a skill that involves speaking and listening. Most of us are poor at both. It takes verbal dexterity in an environment of trust to accurately share one's ideas and thoughts so that an entire idea is communicated. Likewise, it takes audio dexterity to hear what is being transmitted so that a fragile idea is not shattered upon contact with the receptor. We need to learn to send and receive messages better. Marriage is the place where communication skills are developed and tested.

No man marries a witch, but a man has the ability to turn a woman into one by mixing criticism and selfishness into the broth of courtship (Galatians 5:16ff). The unholy trio of septic contaminates can infect a good marriage. Couples must learn to judge the three sins if they are to avoid making a witch's brew:

PRIDE: "Pride goeth before destruction (in marriage)" (Proverbs 16:18)

Pride is so offensive that it is first on God's Hate List (Proverbs 6:16). By it Satan was cast out of heaven, and those who live in pride will find themselves opposed by God (I Peter 5:5). A proud person will not admit wrong. An invincible heart must win at all cost, even if it means humiliating and destroying a spouse who blocks their selfish pursuits. Humility is God's resolution.

ANGER: ". . . grievous words stir up anger . . . and, it is better to live in a desert than with a quarrelsome and ill-tempered wife" (Proverbs 15:1; 21:19).

Anger over meals, late dinners, and toothpaste create a cloud of discontent in marriage. Outburst of anger contaminates the marriage and wounds spirits.

BITTERNESS: "See to it that no one misses the grace of God and that no bitter root grows up to cause trouble and defile many." - Hebrews 12:15

The word "bitterness" (*pikrias*) is translated "gall," "wormwood," "hemlock" and "venom" in the O.T. Bitterness is an infection of a wounded spirit. It is to the soul what gangrene is to infected flesh. Notice the phrase "defile many." When bitter weeds crop up in the garden of human relationships, they multiply. Eventually, bitterness will drain the relationship of joy and happiness.

Grace is God's preventative to bitterness. When one believes God loves them and fertilizes his garden of relationships with the love of God, the whole family is warmed by the Sonshine.

"Walk in the Spirit and you will not fulfill the lusts of the flesh,"
(Galatians 5:16).

6.10. The Deeper Side of Love



"God is love" - 1 John 4:7

God loves because of Who He is and not because of who we are.

Commitment

Acceptance

Love is a commitment to give, and it must be received and accepted to produce happiness. But there is a risk in love, the risk of rejection. Therefore, to love is

to be vulnerable. The opposite of love is self-protection—a lack of vulnerability.

Trust Responsibility

Lovers build a relationship on trust. It is impossible to love without trusting. Love is vulnerable because it trust another with needs and weaknesses. The one who is trusted is being leaned upon and has the responsibility of protecting that trust. However, the one who trusts is vulnerable and if the person being trusted is weak, they may fail that trust. There is a responsibility in being trusted and there is the danger of violating trusts and wounding others.

Pain Violation of a trust

Lovers must negotiate with pain or they will never be complete in their love. The greatest lovers receive the greatest amount of hurt. Committed people care, and because they care, they are vulnerable to the failures of others. When other people fail, it hurts. The pain you feel is not an indication of your weakness, but a mark of your mates' immaturity. Pain tells you that you have loved and trusted; that you have followed Christ.

Grace Forgiveness

When one is wounded, it hurts. When hurt, you must share with your mate how they hurt you. The healing process begins when hurt is shared and the offender admits his failure, seeks forgiveness, and comes alongside to share in the pain they caused. Confession says, "I agree. I have failed your trust and wounded you. I was wrong. Will you forgive me? How can I help relieve the pain you feel?" Healing can take place when there is confession and effort on the part of the offender to restore the relationship, and where forgiveness and grace are extended by the wounded. Forgiveness says, "I not only forgive your act, but the pain you caused."

Christ Pain Healing

The greatest lover was Christ: He who loved best was wounded the most. But, through His wounds healing has come to mankind.

"By His wounds are we healed . . ." (Isaiah 53:5, 6).

Your emotional wounds are God's message that you must go deeper into love. The "feeling hurt" has the duty to admit it and confront your spouse out of love for your spouses' good. The one doing the hurting has a need to go deeper

into love . . . deeper into a walk with the Spirit . . . to listen, consider, and change if necessary.

The one who “feels hurt” must evaluate if their spouse has seriously violated a rule of marriage or if they are being too sensitive by wearing their feelings “on their sleeve.”

6.11. **Flesh & Spirit Factors in Marriage**

Before we can manage a human relationship, we need to major on personal management, particularly managing our own Spirit. A general once said, “We have met the enemy and it is us.” The greatest battle may not be on the playing field of life but in the human heart.

In the OT, we have the story of Isaac and Ishmael (Genesis 21). When Isaac was born, Ishmael who was the son of Hagar, began to mock Isaac, the son of Sarah. The solution was to expel Ishmael from the camp (21:10). In N.T. times, the Judaizers derided the Christians and created conflict in the church. The Judaizers were labeled “in the flesh” and Christians were identified to be “in the Spirit” by the apostle (Galatians 4:29; 5:1-10). Paul set up a Greek dualism and contrasted the Ishmael/Isaac conflict with the historic agitation occurring between Judaizers and Christians (Galatians 5:1ff). The *sarx* (flesh) opposed the *pneuma* (spirit). *Sarx* and *pneuma* are metonyms for the Jewish/Gentile problem in the Galatian community. That is, the Judaizers were not “born again” nor did they know Christ as their Lord and Savior. Jealous, they assaulted the Christian community and mocked them like Ishmael mocked Isaac. But, what was true on the stage history, was also true of the believer’s new gestalt (spiritual properties).

When we receive Christ as His Savior, we receive the Spirit (Galatians 3:2; Ephesians 1:13). Regenerated, we have a tremendous drive to know God and to please Him. However, there is a part of us that is not born again, namely the body and its principalities. The unregenerated part of us (flesh/body) is in conflict with the regenerated part of us (the spirit). What are we to do?

We are to do what Sarah did with Ishmael: to expel Ishmael and to nurture her son (Galatians 4:30; 5:1-21). That is, we have a need to oppose the demands of the “flesh” in our lives with all its lusts, anger, and factions, and we

(regenerated beings) are to nourish the demands of the Spirit in our lives. In Galatians, Paul call for us “to walk in the Spirit” which yields the fruits of the Spirit (Galatians 5:22). In Ephesians 5:18, Paul identifies the need “to be filled” with the Spirit which is synonymous to being “controlled by the Spirit.” In Colossians, the need is for believers to let the Word of God rule the home (Colossians 3:16-18).

In conclusion, if we let the flesh, the unregenerated part of us, control our marriage; our marriage will be filled with “hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, and strife” (Galatians 5:20). But, if we as regenerated beings yield to the Spirit, our marriage will reap a harvest of “love, joy, and peace” (Galatians 5:22).

6.12. Steps to Repair a Broken Relationship

“ . . . if thy brother (spouse) shall trespass (a serious violation of love) against thee, go and tell him (or her) his fault between thee and him alone: if he shall hear thee, thou hast gained thy brother” - Proverbs 18:21



Insights

You have heard about the little Dutch boy that saved the dam from breaking by sticking his index finger into the hole of the dyke. Marriage is like that. Little cracks can become major threats. We need to know how to repair them. You can repair a broken relationship by following these steps:

Step One: Admission

"Ouch! You hurt me!" This is easy to say as a child, but as we grow older, we are trained to cover up our hurts. However, covering our wounds only increases the risk of a relational degeneration. Pain in the soul can turn into a kind of gangrene of the human spirit. The Bible calls it bitterness (Hebrews 12:15). Bitterness is translated “hemlock” and “venom” in the O.T. If left untreated, people get hurt again and again until finally the wound festers and poisons the tissue that holds the marriage together. The Bible calls it, “defiling many.”

The first principle of relational first-aid is to admit wounded ness. To some, admitting hurt is more difficult than treading across burning coals in bare feet. It is associated with weakness and ineptness. This is especially true for men. Men are trained to be tough. Men will risk life and limb on the gridiron to score a TD, but they will not expose their soul to pain for fear of getting emotionally hurt. Most men will not cry because they refuse to let anything touch the nerves of their soul. Even when hurt, they "macho" their way through the suffering. Emotional calluses form making it impossible to be fully human.

Admission that one has been hurt is not a sign of weakness, but of strength; not of enfeeblement, but of character; not of impotence, but of dependence on the relationship. One cannot be treated for disease unless he admits he is sick. Likewise, one cannot be healed emotionally unless one admits that he has been hurt.

Step Two: Examination

When hurt you must ask, "Why am I feeling this pain?" Relational pain happens for two reasons: (a) one has developed personal rights that God has not ordained, i.e., one did not get his way on a matter, or (b) a violation of a trust. If the pain is due to the former, then you go deeper into Christ and place your personal rights at the foot of the cross. But if a violation of trust occurs, you must go deeper into love and confront your brother (Matthew 18:15ff).

Step Three: Confrontation

When you are hurt by another because of a violation of principle on their part, you need to go and share with him or her what he or she did and how it hurt you (Luke 17:3, 4). This is a difficult step to take. If you do not go, a root of bitterness will develop in your heart, which will defile your relationships. God holds us responsible to communicate our hurts in love ("speaking the truth in love . . ."). It has the other's best in mind because you are trying to restore a relationship with someone you care about. To ignore hurt is only hiding the problem. It is like starting a stamp collection of hurts. Each time a wound is incurred, it is pasted into the scrapbook of your memory. When the book is filled, you cash in your anger. Instead of dealing with one hurt, you now force your mate to deal with hundreds. Do what the Scripture says and do not let the Sun go down on your wrath (Ephesians 4: 26). Manage your struggles day to day.

Step Three: Inspection:

"Why do you look at the speck of sawdust in your brother's eye and pay no attention to the plank in your own eye?" - Matthew 7:3

If you are wounded by your spouse, then you need to go to them and share how they hurt you. This will help them to know the damaging effects of their words and actions in your life, and it will help them to be more sensitive in the future. However, your spouse may not listen if they were hurt in the altercation with you.

Therefore, you need to inspect your own your walk and talk before you go and confront your spouse about his or her failure. Jesus said that a person must take the beam out of his own eye before he can take the splinter out of another's. With the help of the Spirit, examine your life to see if you have failed to follow a principle in God's Word. Jesus stated the principle: When hurt, we must not only admit our hurt, but we must first confess our fault before we attempt to correct our partner who hurt us.

Step Four: Confession

"Therefore, confess your sins to each other . . ." - James 5:16

If there are three words more difficult to say in the English language than, "I am hurt", then it must be the words, "I am wrong." Saying, "I am sorry," is not the same as admitting, "I was wrong," and following up with the question, "Will you forgive me for what I said?"

God calls us not only to admit wrong, but to accept responsibility for the pain we cause. Until we deal with the hurts we cause, we are not in a position to confront another about their faults. It is not weakness to admit wrong done, but an act of character. People will forgive anything but impeccability. Once we have admitted our fault in a matter, we move into a position to help "take the splinter" out of your brother's eye.

Once we have dealt with our responsibility in a matter, we can ask, "May I share with you how you hurt me?" When you share your hurt and their fault in a matter, you are helping them to be a better person. If they accept responsibility to for their actions, you are in a position to forgive and restore the breach.

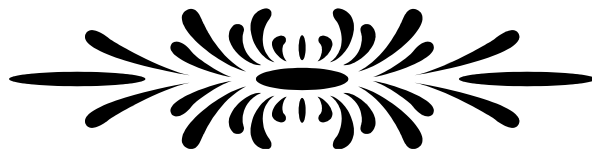
Step Five: Remission

"Forgive as the Lord forgave you" - Colossians 3:13

The key to patching the hole in the dike is the peg of forgiveness. It can plug the holes and plugs the cracks in a relationship.

When your spouse admits their wrong and asks for forgiveness, it needs to be granted. Forgiveness is not saying that "I'll try to forget," but it is admitting : "Yes, I am hurt, but I'm willing to forgive your act and the pain that it caused. I promise not to hold this against your or bring it up in the future."

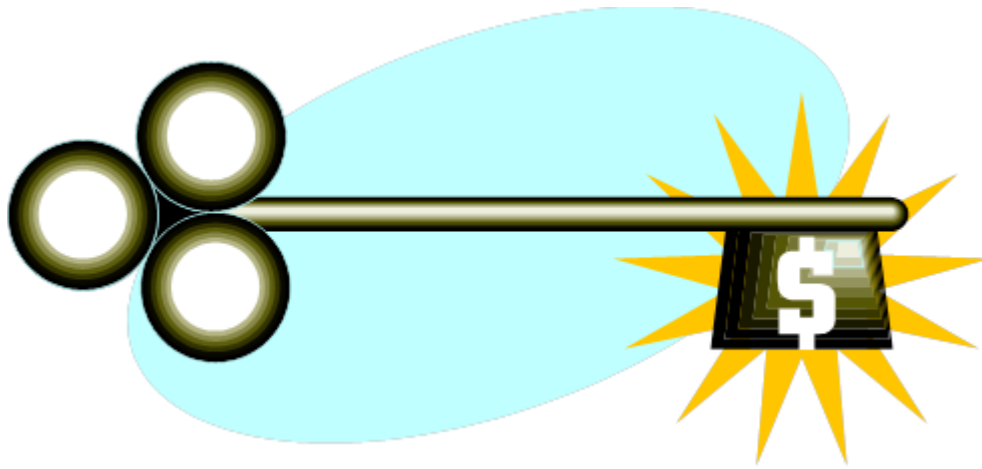
Forgiveness focuses on the future, a future where there will be more pain, more wounds, and more forgiveness. Forgiveness says: "I love you and I accept you and I am willing to carry the pain that you caused because of the joy we have as a couple." Marriages built on this foundation will never fail (1 Corinthians 13:8a).



Lesson Six

7. Money Matters

A Study on Family Finances



"For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also."- Matthew 6:21

7.1. Adam's Rib



Eve: I don't want to complain, but every time I ask Adam to help me plant a garden, he digs up an excuse to avoid it."

Guy: "Remember, darling? Last night you said there was something about me you could love?"

Gal: "Yeah, but you spent it all."

There are two sides to every money decision we make in this family: her side and the wrong side.

Sam: "Did you tell Bill that his wife just had triplets?"

Gus: "Didn't dare. He's still shaving."

Proud wife: "My husband has a very responsible job with 2,000 men under him."

Doubtful: "Oh, what does your husband do"

Wife: "He cuts the grass at the cemetery."

Like blisters. some husbands never show up until the work is done.

Roses are red,

Violet are blue,

Carnations are \$12.95!

Will dandelions do?

Banker, to a wife applying for a charge account: "And what is your husband's average income," inquired the teller.

Wife: "Oh, around 10:00 PM," she replied.

Pastoral advice: "Here is how to please a women:

In her teens she needs adventure.
In her twenties she needs romance.
In her thirties she needs security.
In her forties she needs compassion.
In her fifties she needs cash."

Daughter: "I want to marry Bob."

Mother: "This sounds serious. Does Bob have a job."

Daughter: "Oh, yes. He erases the blackboard after school for Mrs. Jones."

Note: This lesson is a troubling lesson because it raises more questions than answers.

7.2. Agree-Disagree

Agree Disagree

- ___ ___ 1. Money is the root of all evil.
- ___ ___ 2. Everyone should pay their fair share of taxes.
- ___ ___ 3. All our money belongs to God.
- ___ ___ 4. It is selfish to save money for future needs.
- ___ ___ 5. Going into debt is wrong and sinful.
- ___ ___ 6. A good goal of a marriage is financial independence.
- ___ ___ 7. We should give 10% of our net income to the church.
- ___ ___ 8. Borrowing money for an appreciating item is not wrong.
- ___ ___ 9. Credit card companies loan money to CC users.
- ___ ___ 10. It is a man's responsibility to balance the checkbook.
- ___ ___ 11. It is best if a woman does not work outside the home.
- ___ ___ 12. Poverty is a sign that God is not blessing your home.
- ___ ___ 13. Possessing riches is a sign of God's blessing.

- ___ ___ 14. Every couple should have life insurance.
- ___ ___ 15. We should pay our bills before we tithe.
- ___ ___ 16. We are going to go to church every Sunday.
- ___ ___ 17. Indebtedness is a sign of greed and covetousness.
- ___ ___ 18. We should start saving for our children's education now.
- ___ ___ 19. Gambling is a sin.
- ___ ___ 20. The husband should pay the bills, not the wife.
- ___ ___ 21. The husband should have final say on how money is spent.
- ___ ___ 22. We should keep 5-10% of our earned money for ourselves.
- ___ ___ 23. We will run our home on a budget.
- ___ ___ 24. Lending money to friends is not a good idea.
- ___ ___ 25. A T.V. is a necessity these days.

7.3. Money and Scriptures

Q: What do you learn about money from the Following Scriptures?

"All hard work leads to profit." - Proverbs 14:23

"We gave you this rule: if a man will not work, he shall not eat"- 2 Thessalonians 3:10

"But thou shalt remember the LORD thy God: for it is he that giveth thee power to get wealth, that he may establish his covenant which he sware unto thy fathers, as it is this day." - Deuteronomy 8:18

"And my God will supply all your needs according to His riches in glory in Christ Jesus."- Philippians 4:19

"I am the Lord Your God, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt. Open your mouth wide, and I will fill it." -Psalm 81:10

"And it is a good thing to receive wealth from God and the good health to enjoy it. To enjoy your work and accept your lot in life – this is indeed a gift from God." - Ecclesiastes 5:19

“Honor the LORD from your wealth and from the first of all your produce; So your barns will be filled with plenty and your vats will overflow with new wine.”- Proverbs 3:9-10

“Whoever loves money never has enough; whoever loves wealth is never satisfied with their income. This too is meaningless.” – Ecclesiastes 5:10

“For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.”- Matthew 6:21

*“Better the little that the righteous have than the wealth of many wicked;”
Psalms 37:16-17*

*“Keep your lives free from the love of money and be content with what you have, because God has said, “Never will I leave you; never will I forsake you.” -
Hebrews 13:5.*

“ “No one can serve two masters. Either you will hate the one and love the other, or you will be devoted to the one and despise the other. You cannot serve both God and money.” – Matthew 6:24.

“ For the love of money is a root of all kinds of evil. Some people, eager for money, have wandered from the faith and pierced themselves with many griefs.” 1 Timothy 6:10

“Let no debt remain outstanding, except the continuing debt to love one another, for whoever loves others has fulfilled the law.” - Romans 13:8

7.4. Resource Texts

Look up five to six of following verses, mark them with a \$ sign in your Bible, and write a principle you learn about money:

Deuteronomy 5:19	Proverbs 3:16	Proverbs 12:15
Deuteronomy 14:22-29	Proverbs 6:6-8	Proverbs 16:3; 9: 21:5
Deuteronomy 23:19-20	Proverbs 6:9-11	Proverbs 21:20
1 Samuel 2:7	Proverbs 10:2	Proverbs 22:29
Psalms 34:9	Proverbs 10:15	Proverbs 27:23-24
Psalms 37:21	Proverbs 10:22	Ecclesiastes 2:18-21, 26
Psalms 52:7	Proverbs 10:25	Malachi 1:7-9
Proverbs 2:9-10	Proverbs 11:28	Matthew 6:19-21

Matthew 6:25-34	Romans 13:8	2Thessalonians 3:6-10
Matthew 13:22	1 Corinthians 4:2	1Timothy 6:11-19
Matthew 17:24-26	1 Corinthians 9:7-14	1Timothy 5:
Matthew 22:15-21	2Corinthians 8:1-6	2Timothy 2:4-6
Matthew 24:14-30	2 Corinthians 9:1-5	2Timothy 3:1-2
Luke 16:9	Galatians 6:6	Hebrews 13:5
Luke 16:10	Ephesians 4:28	James 2:1-7, 15-16
Luke 16:11-12	Philippians 4:6-7	James 5:1-5
Luke 16:13	Philippians 4:10-13	
Romans 13:5-7	1Thessalonians 4:11ff	

7.5. The Practice of Money Matters



Now is the time to set some policies that will please God and set your course throughout life. Answer the following questions the best you can, and make sure that you are in agreement about the principles that you are going to follow.

1. Remembering the principle of authority and headship in the home, who is going to pay the bills and manage the money in your home?
2. Preparing for possible tension: If the wife pays the bills and balances the checkbook, how is the husband going to (a) ask for money, and (b) not override delegated authority? If the husband pays the bills and balances the checkbook, how is the wife going to (a) have money of her own to spend as she sees fit, and (c) not be put in a position of nagging to remind the husband of financial needs in the home?
3. What do you believe about going to church? Define your commitment to this great institution (Hebrews 10:24, 25)?
4. What do you believe about the wife working? How is a family going to fit into your financial goals? Is money or children more important to you? Will the wife have to work when the kids are young, in school, or when the kids are teens?

5. You should have a savings program: The choice is to borrow, or to save. List your future needs in order of priority, how much they will cost, and arrange a savings plan to meet those needs.
6. A couple has a financial responsibility to God and the ministry. What do you believe about tithing/giving? (Proverbs 3:9, 10) How will this be applied to marriage? What is going to prevent you from (a) robbing God (Malachi 3:10), or (b) offering an inferior sacrifice (Malachi 1:5ff).
7. We are committed to give...
8. Define debt. What do you really believe about debt? Is there good debt? Bad debt? Is borrowing a sin? Are unpaid bills a sin? What kind of throttle are you going to put on your spending? Write out a debt policy. State in your policy some guidelines about credit cards and for what item you will and will not borrow.
 - Debt is...
 - We will not borrow for...
 - We may borrow for...
9. There is a tragedy in Scripture in the life of a Christian couple. Discuss together the sin of Ananias and Sapphira (Acts 5:1-11). What are the brakes in your marriage? What is going to prevent both of you from agreeing together to misuse your money or allow one to misuse money? Does submission in your marriage mean that the wife must go along with possible bad decisions or wrong decisions on the part of the husband?

7.6. What is Debt?

“Let no debt remain outstanding, except the continuing debt to love one another, for whoever loves others has fulfilled the law.” - Romans 13:8

Note: How you define money and debt is of utmost importance. Since the government did away with gold and silver in 1933, you will have to borrow “something” to pay for houses and cars. How are going to handle alleged “debt” in your marriage?

In law, definitions are everything. Who ever controls the definition of an economic term controls the argument

Teaser Questions

1. What is Biblical money?

2. What is “money” in the United States?
3. What is the difference between one gold dollar and one FRN?
4. What is the difference between “money of account” and “money of exchange”?
5. Opinion: Do banks loan you “real money” or “credit”?
6. What is credit?
7. What is so dangerous about electronic currencies?
8. What is real wealth? Gold, silver, land, houses or hundreds of FRNs?
9. Do banks and credit card companies loan you money or do they loan you credit? Is loaning credit legal in the United States?
10. What is real debt? What is the difference between real debt and pretended debt, if any?
11. Are unpaid taxes a “debt?” Why or why not?

“A debt is a sum of money due by contract . . . by a certain and express agreement.” – Black’s Law Dictionary.

You are NOT required to have all the answers to this question, just know that debt is an elephant on the chest in marriage. You will have to discover the answers to these troubling questions after you are married.

7.7. Are You a Taxpayer?

“TAXPAYER” v “NONTAXPAYER”

Is every human being that walks on the soil of the 50 states a “taxpayer?”

The term “taxpayer” is a slippery term of art because tax laws apply to taxpayers and not nontaxpayers; that is, frequent misuse of the term creates the “presumption” that everyone in the whole world is a taxpayer; the term confuses and ensnares rather than clarifies in order to preclude abuse. The Bible calls it sorcery, a trick of the mind (Rev. 18:23).

The Term “taxpayer”

1. The term “taxpayer” does not refer to everyone on earth . . . or anyone who works for a living . . . or anyone who pays a tax. Congress is not free to

define a word any way it pleases in order to extend its taxing power. See Eisner v. Macomber, 252 U.S. 189 (1920) .

2. Ronald Reagan stated, "The taxpayer-- that's someone who works for the federal government but doesn't have to take the civil service examination."
3. The term "taxpayer" is defined in 26 U.S.C. §7701(a)(14) and 26 U.S.C. §1313 as someone who is "liable for" and "subject to" the income tax in Internal Revenue Code, Subtitle A.

But, this is a whole topic that needs to be studied. See SEDM.org. You will need to get a handle on the law and taxes or your marriage will go belly up. Study the law and definitions. *Beware of presumption and aware of your own indoctrination.*

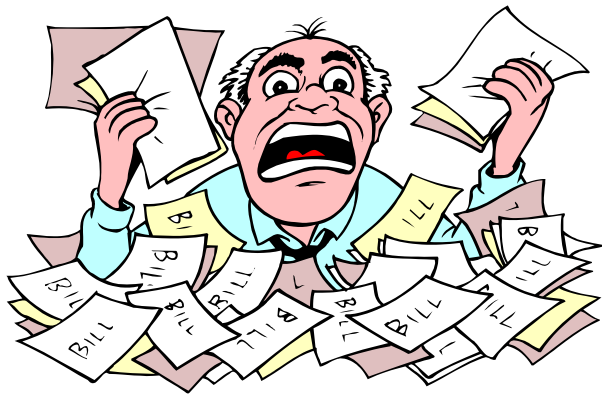
7.8. Testing Your Knowledge about Law

True or False

1. ___ ___ You can trust the government? – Psalm 118:8-9
2. ___ ___ Your government has a Constitutional duty to tell you the truth?
3. ___ ___ You can trust attorneys and accountants trained in government schools?
4. ___ ___ You have a duty to support the government.
5. ___ ___ You have to pay your fair share of taxes?
6. ___ ___ Two things are inescapable: death and taxes.
7. ___ ___ Everyone must pay the income tax? (Pollock Case- 1895).
8. ___ ___ FRNs are backed by gold and silver coin.
9. ___ ___ You live in the United States.
10. ___ ___ If you are born in America, you are a U.S. citizen.
11. ___ ___ You are a resident of your state?
12. ___ ___ The Constitution empowers government to tax your income?
13. ___ ___ Most American are "U.S. persons."
14. ___ ___ You are a "person" or "individual" according to Federal law.
15. ___ ___ If you have a job your are involved in a "trade or business."

16. ___ ___ You must sign and file a 1040 form every year.
17. ___ ___ You are fundamentally subject to the laws of Congress?
18. ___ ___ Congress has power to tax the income of most Americans?
19. ___ ___ Title 26 (tax laws) has been enacted into law and is recorded in the Federal Register.
20. ___ ___ Income includes your salary or wages.
21. ___ ___ Income taxes help support government services.
22. ___ ___ If you don't pay "income taxes" you will go to jail
23. ___ ___ The Constitution empowers the states to collect revenue through property taxes.
24. ___ ___ The county assessor has authority to assess taxes on private property.
25. ___ ___ Most Americans are "employees" whose wages are taxable per per 26 U.S.C. § 3121

For the correct answers consult the "The Great IRS Hoax" at Sovereignty Education Defense Ministry . . . after you are married. ¹



7.9. Steps to Financial Freedom

"For every house is built by someone, but the builder of all things is God" – Hebrews 3:4

"The silver is Mine and the gold is Mine,' declares the Lord of hosts" – Haggai 2:8

¹ All answers are false. To find out why study the resources at SEDM:
<https://sedm.org/Forms/10-Emancipation/CitizenshipStatusVTaxStatus/CitizenshipVTaxStatus.htm>

Next to communication, money management is probably the greatest source of frustration in marriage. The perils of money and the worry about the lack thereof are tremendous sources of tension. It is vital to marital health that you as a couple excel in money management. Money is fluid. People get into trouble financially because they are not standing on solid financial principles. And, just because someone says something is a Biblical principle is not always so (Psalm 120:2*).

Step One: Transfer Ownership to God.

If you take sole responsibility for your financial well-being, then you are on your own. However, if you transfer ownership to the Lord and seek to build on His principles, then you not only have a right to pray and ask for help, but you can expect God to guide you in your financial affairs. The Bible tells us that if you honor the Lord with your wealth . . . "your barns will be filled with plenty" (Proverbs 3:9, 10; Luke 16:1ff). You can make money without God, but you will never enjoy it without His blessing (Ecclesiastes 2:19-25).

Step Two: Give to God First

Set up a giving plan to one of God's storehouses (your local church). Giving to God is not for His benefit, but for ours. Giving is an essential part of fearing God. A man who does not give, does not love or revere Him (Deuteronomy 14:22-29). But, how does a man give to the LORD first when 50 percent of his income goes to the government first?

Christ is Lord. If He is not Lord of all, He is not Lord at all. If He is not Lord of our finances, how can we dare to call Him "Lord?" He deserves to have "pre-eminence" in all things (Colossians 1:18). Therefore, it is only fitting and proper that we honor Him first in the use of our resources.

Secondly, God has ordained that pastors (1 Corinthians 9:1ff; Galatians 6:6) and His work be supported by the gifts of His people. Failure to give is to cut the artery of the ministry. Deficient giving bleeds local ministries. If we have any appreciation for the gospel (Philippians 2:1,2), we will give to support Christ honoring ministries in and through the local church.

Step Three: Give to Yourself Second

Give to yourself and invest in the future. This is not a selfish act. It is a wise and prudent part of stewardship. We must not give all our money to bread maker, the chicken farmer, the automaker, the butcher, and to furniture builder. God wants us to save, and then invest that money in something that will grow and earn money while we sleep. The goal is to have enough money we do not have to work for money.

Step Four: Develop a strategy for Tax Avoidance.

You have been brainwashed and programmed to believe you must support the government through taxes.

Because the "dollar" is a debt note, Americans are forced to borrow and pay taxes. Between 50 and 60% of a person's income will go toward taxes and debt service. All the "income tax" collected goes to support the interest on the national debt. It does Not pay government salaries. If a couple is ever to gain wealth, they must tame the tax giant and reduce their tax burden. Reducing one's tax burden is called tax avoidance. It is not the same thing as tax evasion. Tax evasion, failing to pay legitimate taxes, is illegal. Tax avoidance, structuring one's business to minimize the tax burden, is not only legal, but wise and prudent. Do all you can to reduce your tax liability.

Do all you can to learn about the fundamentals of tax law. Remember, the government uses "Word Art," that is, the government has its own definitions regarding words. What you think a word means is not what the word actually means! Deception abounds. Discovering the meaning of words like "income," "wage," "taxpayer," and "employee" will astound you.

The U.S. Constitution only authorizes two types of taxes, direct taxes and indirect taxes (Article 1, Section 2, Clause 3; Article 1, Section 8, Clause 1). A direct tax on your wage is unconstitutional, unless of course, you choose to volunteer it. Unfortunately, misinformation and fear abound. It is difficult to get at the truth on this matter without diligent study. You would do well to study these matters, take appropriate steps, and eliminate as much tax as is legally possible (Psalm 146:3).

Step Five: If possible, get out of Debt "Owe no man anything . . ." (Romans 13:8)

This is easier said than done, especially since our economy is credit-debt driven!

Understand what debt really is. Debt is borrowing from your future income to pay for present wants or needs. Borrowing mortgages your future and lowers your present standard of living. The opposite of borrowing is saving! God's way is to take a portion out of your present income to save for future needs. But it is impossible to save if one is in debt.

To have a real debt someone must loan you "money of exchange" from their own assets and you must make a legal agreement to pay it back. Banks never loan their own assets . . . they create money of account by (they credit money) to your checking account(s)) and have the balderdash to charge you interest on NOTHING!

"What they [banks] do when they make loans is to accept promissory notes in exchange for credits to the borrowers' transaction accounts.

Loans (assets) and deposits (liabilities) both rise by [the amount of the "loan"]."(Modern Money Mechanics, page 6, Federal Reserve Bank of Chicago)

All they've done is converted your promissory note into "funds" that they then "loan" back to you. And now you have to pay them again, plus interest?

It is not sin to be in debt under this fake system, but neither is it an advantage. It is sin, however, not to pay back debts on legitimate exchanges of real money as they come due to which you have agreed to pay. For example, if you borrow "money of exchange" from a close friend, you MUST pay them back!

The truth of the matter is that in today's society, no one has achieved financial freedom without going into debt, except of course, those born with a silver spoon in their mouth. When you borrow, do so wisely, i.e., when you borrow, borrow money on something that will (a) go up in value, or (b) hold its value. Avoid borrowing money, if possible, on depreciating assets. Cars and houses are not investments. They are liabilities.

Step Six: Invest Your Savings (Proverbs 21:5)

The key to wealth is to invest in appreciating assets – assets that make money while you sleep. The Rule of 72 states an investment principle: Dividing 72 by the interest rate determines the amount of years it takes for your investment to double. For example: If you have an investment that earns 10% a year, you will double your money in 7.2 years.

It is essential to have a written plan to which you are mutually committed (Proverbs 24:3,4) Plans set your course. Without one you are subject to the whims of impulse. A written plan means you need to have financial goals and to separate fantasy from reality.

Step Seven: Invest with Experts (Proverbs 19:20)

Most of us are not wizards in the financial matters. You will need the help from someone who has financial know-how and who is committed to your welfare. First, choose a person who truly cares about you and seek their advice. Bankers and stockbrokers and CPA's are in business to make money and do not always have your best interest in mind. Be careful about who you choose as your counsel. Secondly, invest your money with experts in the field. Learn the difference between pretenders and genuine experts. Authentic experts who care about you are rare. My son use to be a stockbroker and said the standing joke in the office about investors was this: "I made money. The company made money. Two out of three ain't bad." Get it? It is easier to lose it than to make it. Invest with experts.

Step Six: Plan a budget.

This means you need a written plan, and that you must learn the discipline of staying within a budget. Self-control comes before prosperity. This will not be easy, but it is a necessity. You will need God's help. Do not be afraid to ask Him for wisdom (James 1:5).

May God give you grace and wisdom to invest for the good of your family and for the furtherance of the gospel.

In order to create wealth you will have to be a student of the U.S. fake “money system” and develop lawful strategies to keep what you earn.



7.10. Our Budget

Total Monthly Income	-----
Working Income (minus "withholdings")	-----
Tithe	-----
Retirement Plan	-----
Investments	-----
Savings	-----
Medical	-----
Insurance	-----
Insurance	-----
Taxes	-----
Housing (Rent)	-----
Repairs	-----
Utilities	-----
Phones & Communications	-----
Periodicals	-----
Clothing	-----
Child Care	-----
Groceries, medicines, perishable items	-----
Home Furnishings	-----
Car loan (A)	-----
Car loan (B)	-----
Auto Insurance	-----
Car Repairs	-----
Gasoline	-----
Debt Service	-----
Recreation (meals out, travel, vacation, movies)	-----
Gifts	-----
Total Expenses	-----

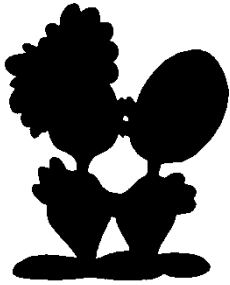
Session Six

8. Love & Luv



Marriage is honorable in all, and the bed undefiled: but whoremongers and adulterers God will judge" - Hebrews 13:4

8.1. Adam's Rib



Eve: "Adam, how come you never tell me you love me."

Adam: "I told you that I loved you on the day we were married, and I meant every word of it."

Her: "And are mine the only lips you've ever kissed?"

Him: "Oh yes, and they are the sweetest of them all."

Voice of Wisdom: Make a deal with your wife... that if she'll quit driving from the back seat, you'll stop cooking from the dining room table.

Which is worse: A wife that is a backseat driver or a husband that cooks from the dining room table?

Mother: "I had a heart to heart talk with our daughter last night about the facts of life."

Father: "Really. Did you learn anything new?"

"Give me a kiss, Sugar."

"No! My mother is against kissing."

"But, baby, I don't want to kiss your mother."

Eskimo boy: "Why, I'd travel through a 1,000 miles of blizzards, snow, sleet and rain just to hold your hand."

Eskimo girl: "Ah, that's a bunch of mush."

Do you know how to remember your wife's birthday? Just forget it once.

Woman to a policeman: "I want to report a missing husband. He is short, bald, has false teeth, and.....on the second thought, just forget the whole thing."

Love at first sight never happens before breakfast.

Gloomy: "Doctor, I don't think my husband loves me anymore."

Doctor: "Now, now, let's not jump to conclusions. What makes you think he doesn't love you?"

Gloomy: "He's been gone for five years and I haven't heard a word from him."

You had better keep your words soft and sweet. One day you may have to eat them.

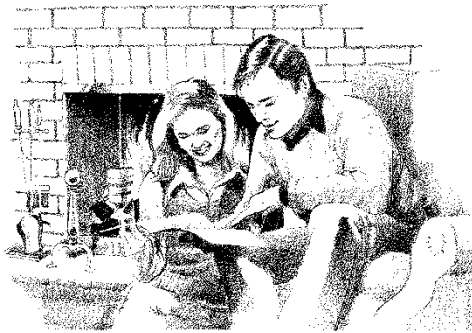
8.2. Agree-Disagree

Agree Disagree

- ___ ___ 1. Sex is only for the propagation of the human race.
- ___ ___ 2. Sex is a holy and spiritual experience.
- ___ ___ 3. A woman wants a sexually aggressive man.
- ___ ___ 4. A wife should always submit to a husband's sexual demands.
- ___ ___ 5. Sexual drives are one of men's strongest motivations.
- ___ ___ 6. Cut downs are harmless.
- ___ ___ 8. Men enjoy sex more than women.
- ___ ___ 9. Reading / viewing pornography will help sexual happiness in marriage.
- ___ ___ 10. Sex during a woman's period is against the laws of nature.
- ___ ___ 11. Men are more sensitive about sexual criticism than women.
- ___ ___ 12. Lovemaking should be spontaneous and unplanned.
- ___ ___ 13. Acceptance is absolutely necessary for sexual fulfillment.
- ___ ___ 14. Men have stronger sex drives than women.
- ___ ___ 15. A wife should tell her husband what makes her happy.
- ___ ___ 16. Children should be planned and not an "accident."

- ___ ___ 17. It isn't proper for a Christian woman to be sexy.
- ___ ___ 18. In marriage, you still have rights over your body.
- ___ ___ 19. Only the man should initiate love-making.
- ___ ___ 20. God designed sex for fun and recreation.
- ___ ___ 21. It is O.K. to use sex as a reward.

8.3. The Art of Loving



1. Our society puts a premium on knowledge, eloquence, and education. What premium does God put on love (I Corinthians 13:1-3)?
2. There are differences between men and women. What stresses do these put on marriage and how do they test the sincerity of our love?
3. There is much confusion today about the term "love". We "love" apple pie; we "love" a new car; and we say "I love you". What is the difference between love and lust; love and puppy-love; love and the sexual experience?
4. Define the word "love" and describe what it is not. In I Corinthians 13, Paul lists seven traits disassociated with love. Can you identify them?
5. What values does God's Word place on sex in marriage?
 - Genesis 1:28, 31
 - Proverbs 5:18,19
 - Deuteronomy 24:5
 - Hebrew 13:4, 5
6. What can hinder sexual enjoyment in marriage?
 - Romans 8:1
 - I Corinthians 7:2-5
 - Ephesians 4:29-32
 - Song of Solomon 5:2-8

Jeremiah 5:8

6. In your opinion, what values does "women's liberation" movement place on women . . . on men?
7. Why is sex never a bargaining tool in a healthy marriage? 1 Corinthians 7:1
8. Once married, what rights do you have over your own body? Do you really believe your own answer?
9. Twice the Spirit command older women to teach younger women how to love their husbands in Titus 2. Why twice?
10. In your opinion, what do men need to learn about how to love a wife?



8.4. The Hand of Love and the Hand of Lust

The words, "I love you" are used to define emotions toward chocolate fudge ripples, cute pets, and beloved family members. Love is almost synonymous with the term "desire" in our society. But love and desire are miles apart as the following

illustration demonstrates:

THE HAND OF LOVE

1. Awareness of a beautiful person
2. Respect for that person
3. Admiration of the person
4. Affection that leads to hope
5. Selfless devotion

THE HAND OF LUST

1. Awareness of beauty
2. Appraisal of assets
3. Pursuit of the person
4. A tale of emotional deceit
5. Self-gratification

Love is not a desire that ends in self-gratification, but a quality of selfless devotion. Love is not a feeling or an emotion. It is an act of the will that endures pain for the healing of another. It is a commitment of one's total resources to those we love.

Sex is God's gift to those who remain pure.

8.5. Differences Between Love and Sex

LOVE . . . SEX



Love is spiritual and supernatural.

Sex comes natural.

Love must be learned.

No learning is necessary for sex.

Love takes constant attention.

Sex takes very little attention.

Love takes time to develop and mature.

Sex is quick and responsive.

Love takes thinking and an act of the will.

Sex is controlled mainly by feelings and emotions.

Love takes character.

Sex takes a willing partner.

Love involves respect of the individual.

Sex does not require respect.

Love requires lots of warm laughter.

Sex requires little or no laughter

Love requires honest talk.

Sex requires little or no talk.

Love requires a sustained commitment.

Sex requires only a temporary focus.

Sex is a gift of God but it is not a spectator sport.

8.6. Differences Between Men and Women, Sometimes



"Male and female He created them" _ Genesis 1:27

Men and women are different, not just physically, but psychologically. The differences can put a stress on a relationship, or they can adorn the relationship.

Beware of being propagandized by whacko social engineers there is not difference between men and women . . . that gender is a choice . . . that you can be whatever you want to be.

Below are a few differences that are commonly recognized among the sexes. These are generally true for the sexes, however, specific statements may not be entirely applicable to all personalities.

MEN

Men **are** conquerors, risk takers
Men win with the use of force
Men are logical thinkers
Men are goal centered
Men are soul modest
Men are concerned about their job
Men discuss issues
Men are passionate and sensual
Men trade love for sex
Men focus on essentials
Men seek self-improvement
Men are emotionally steady
Men are impersonal about problems
Men function well with principles
Men can enjoy sex anytime
Men tend to forget the past
past

WOMEN

Women are lovers, self-sacrificing
Women win with love
Women are emotional feelers
Women are womb-centered
Women are body modest
Women are concerned about the home
Women share feelings about events
Women are romantic and emotional
Women trade sex for love
Women focus on details
Women seek quality relationships
Women are emotionally versatile
Women take problems personally
Women function well with formulas
Women enjoy sex in the right setting
Women remember details about the

Men live in the future

Women live day to day

Men enjoy opportunity and challenge

Women enjoy the security of structure

Men think of sex as an experience

Women think of sex as what they are

Men respond sexually by sight

Women respond to sound and touch

Men need to be admired

Women need love and understanding

Men are upfront and above board

Women can be catty and sneaky

God creates men.

God creates women.

8.7. Sexual Happiness in Marriage

“Let thy fountain be blessed: And rejoice with the wife of thy youth. Let her be as the loving hind and pleasant roe; Let her breasts satisfy thee at all times; And be thou ravished always with her love.” – Proverbs 5:18-19



1. Remain pure before marriage and save your body for the one you will faithfully love and marry. A pure stream is better than a muddy river. Couples that have had multi-sexual experiences are plagued with guilt, flashbacks, and the temptation to compare their mate with former partners. If you have stumbled in this area, there is hope in Christ. Ask God to deliver you totally and completely from your sins (I John 1:5-10)
2. Clear your conscience. Sometimes you will hurt one another, and when you do communication breaks down. The relationship becomes loveless. You need to learn to confess your offences quickly and claim the marvelous forgiveness of Christ (I John 1:9). A little remark like, "Honey, I was wrong when I snapped at you," goes a long way in restoring the relationship.

Don't let walls build up between each other. KEEP SHORT ACCOUNTS. A good marriage is not one without conflicts, but one where the couple is able to sit down and work through their differences.
3. Manage your emotions. Events during the week demand a variety of human responses. Like a dog dragging home a dead cat, it easy to drag home anger and frustration from work. Fear and anger are dead cats in the home that stink up the relationship. Women tend to pet the dead cat of fear. Men tend to drag home anger. Negative emotions work against a satisfying sexual relationship. The best way to handle these emotions is to constantly take

your problems to the Lord. "Cast all your anxiety upon him, for he cares for you"(I Peter 5:7).

4. Learn to communicate. No one likes to come out and say, "I want sex with you tonight!" But on the other hand, your spouse is not a mind-reader. Many people go to bed angry because they have unreal expectations of their partner's perceptive abilities. You must learn to communicate your wants and wishes. Trying to be an effective lover without communicating is like trying to shoot at a possum blindfolded.
5. Men: Initiate love in the kitchen, that is, doing dishes and helping with daily chores is a sexy way to say, "We are a team." Men tend to initiate sex like a battalion commando rather than a gentle lover. Women do not "flip on" like a light switch at night. Hubbies must learn to initiate love with sex. Women must learn to include sex in love. A woman is attracted to a man with a handsome spirit.
6. Men: Learn to be a conduit of God's love, that is, to love your wife as Christ loves the church.
 - A. ACCEPT her personhood. She needs to know that you not only love her as a woman, but as a person, not just for her body, but because she is created in the image of God. First and foremost your wife is a human being, a member of the human race. Accept her as a person.
 - B. ACCEPT her as a women with all her differences. She is like you in some ways, but she is not like you in other ways. When you appreciate, rather than criticize, the differences romance happens. It is not the big things you day by day, but the little things you say along the way.
 - C. ACCEPT her in her weakness. Criticism in the kitchen is not conducive to love in the bedroom. Men who have great relationships with their wives accept their wives weaknesses and express appreciation for their strengths.
 - D. ACCEPT her strengths. Today, men and women are taught to compete with one another. God's way is that men and women learn to work together as a team. Women, and men for that matter, who do not feel accepted make poor lovers.

An accepted woman is a confident woman, and a confident woman is a sexy woman. Be smart and accept your wife with God's unconditional love.
7. Women: Be a beautiful woman. No man wants to apologize for the way his wife looks or acts. Some women get married, and they fall apart like a flaky biscuit. A good wife will make herself attractive by staying slim and by dressing attractively. Years ago, Reader's Digest produced an article about sex and women. Here were some of the conclusions.

Intelligence: Despite the stereotype of dumb blonds, men really prefer a woman that has brains and acts smart.

Humor: Men prefer being around a woman that cheers them up. Laughter really is the spice of life and every woman ought to perfume herself with it.

Self-reliance: Men knot up with a wife that is insecure. They appreciate a woman that has self-confidence that is expressed in a network of friends and social relationships. In fact, self-confidence was the most pleasing trait mentioned by men about sexy women.

Beauty: Men's attraction to women is historically founded. Men prefer a well-dressed woman as opposed to an sloppily dressed one. Be as beautiful as you can possibly be. Remember, the models on the Cosmopolitan Magazine are not dressed in stretched out T-shirts and faded jeans.

8. Women: be committed to sexuality. Learn to accept yourself as a sexual being that enjoys giving and receiving pleasure. It is O.K. to be sexy. Express your joy verbally. Lying on the bed like a cadaver with the silly smile of Mona Lisa does not exactly express the joy of the occasion (Proverbs 5:18, 19). God created us to be sexual beings and after all was created, he said, "It is good." Therefore, human sexuality is good.

Sex is not sub-human, dirty, or beastly. Sex is God's wedding present to couples. Being "ho-hum" about this gift is a common complaint of husbands about wives. Women need to convey to their husbands that they are interested in sex. If you are not, you should be. Being committed to sexuality means to enjoy your own nature and the nature of your husband.

9. Be in agreement about birth control. If you choose to use it, use one that is effective. The fear of pregnancy can hinder sexual fulfillment. This means that you will have to be consistent, and that depending on the type you choose, lovemaking may need to be planned in advance instead of always being a spontaneous event.
10. Never criticize or belittle your partner's body, lovemaking, or sexual performance, unless you do not want a sexual relationship for the next ten years. God made us sexual creatures and criticism can be a stab at the heart of our being.

As a child you may have heard this poem:

"Sticks and stones may break my bones, but words will never hurt me."

They lied! Words do hurt. A couple that wants to have a satisfying relationship must learn to handle words like a package of razor blades--gently! Words can rip one to shreds. It is interesting that in the Song of Solomon you cannot find one negative criticism of the lover towards his

bride. The man who criticizes his wife criticizes his own judgment. Men do not marry witches, but they can sure turn a woman into one by careless and cutting words.

11. Be romantic. Start each day with a good morning kiss, affectionate words, and appreciation reminders throughout the day. The romantic ideal is expressed in this song:

*Blow me a kiss across the room
Say I look nice when I'm not,
Touch my hair as you pass my chair.
Little things mean a lot.
Give me the warmth of a secret smile,
To show me you haven't forgot.
For now and forever, for always and ever,
Little things mean a lot.*

12. Learn the facts: It is good to have a healthy understanding of the body and how it works. Understanding basic sexuality will help in achieving sexual fulfillment. There are many good books on the market today, but there is also lots of trash. You will have to be discerning. Some of the books on sex at the local bookstore are vulgar and inappropriate. Beware! Avoid drinking from a muddy stream, go to a holy source.
13. Avoid reading / looking at pornography. Besides putting unreal expectations in your head that your partner cannot possibly fulfill, porn creates dissatisfaction with yourself and your spouse. Without exception, says Dr. Dolf Zillman (a researcher), couples who view sexually-explicit videos become increasingly dissatisfied and critical of their partner. Marriage is holy and the marriage bed undefiled (Hebrews 12:4). Keep it that way by putting Christ at the center of your relationship and by keeping obscenity out of your mind and out of your house. Sex is a great gift from God, but it is not a spectator sport.

8.8. Just Between Us

1. Having read the information on "Principles of Sexual Happiness in Marriage", I feel the most pertinent item that will affect our relationship is .

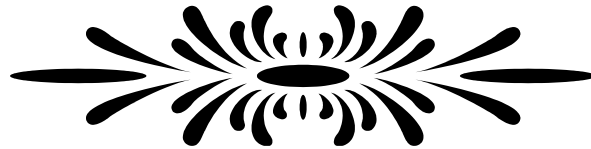
2. Having read the "Differences Between Love and Sex", I feel my biggest challenge will be...
3. Have you read or seen X-rated videos? What impact do you feel this information will have on your sexual relationship?
4. Have you had pre-marital sex? Have you had disease testing? AIDS testing?
5. If yes, how are we going to handle the possible consequences?
6. What kind of birth control are we going to use?

Husband/Wife talk:

Male: The one thing you need to know about male sexuality is . . .

Female: The one thing you need to know about female sexuality is . . .

7. What are your honeymoon dreams? Hopes? Fears?



Lesson Seven

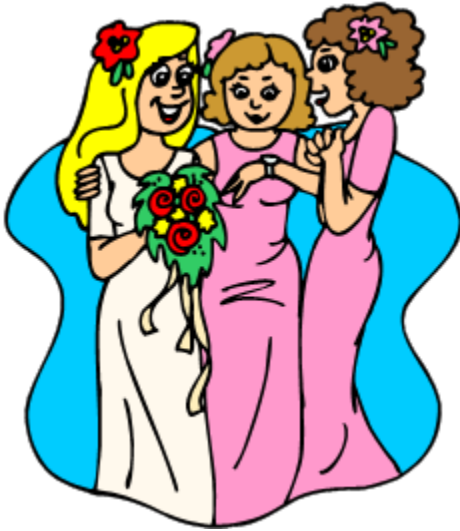
9. Planning Your Wedding



“... and the wedding was furnished with guests” - Matthew 22:10

9.1. Your Only Wedding

*“Whatever you do, work heartily, as for the Lord and not for men” –
Colossians 3:23*



This will be your only wedding. Honor the Lord and plan it well. The following are simple suggestions to help you plan a wedding that will glorify the Lord Jesus Christ and give you lasting, sweet memories.

1. Make your wedding Christ-centered, not man-centered. He ordained the institution of marriage. Invite Him to be your special honored Guest. It is appropriate that the Word of God and prayer be a part of your wedding.
2. Plan a wedding with dignity. It does not have to be elaborate or expensive, large or small, but it should be characterized by order, good planning and decency.
3. Consider your parents. More parents are hurt and deeply offended at weddings than any other time. Your parents love you and want to be a part of your life. Yes, it is your wedding, but consider their suggestions and work with them for the success of this regal event.
4. Plan well in advance: A last-minute wedding can be hectic and frantic. Being in a tither all week before the wedding can trigger a storm of negative emotions. Many out-of-town guests will be arriving. Emotions and expectations are at an all-time high. Try to concentrate on family relationships as much as possible in the final preparation week. Delegate work needed to be done. Make it fun.
5. Be a good steward. This is your only wedding and you will want it to be attractive. But remember that while some possess many of the luxuries of this life, many in the world lack the basic necessities of life. Try to keep a balance between having a nice wedding and being a good steward of your resources. God is rich and can supply all your needs, but he also asks us to be good stewards of our funds.
6. Plan the wedding with your pastor. Most ministers have had experience and can help you make some decisions. Weddings usually have a processional, music, a welcome, a short Bible devotion, vows, exchanging of rings, and a bridal kiss, a pronouncement, and a recessional. Work out the details with him.

7. Take your vows seriously. You might even want to memorize them in advance. After all, it is a commitment for life.
8. Be punctilious in carrying out planned detail. Rings, dresses, attendants, musicians, pictures, candles, tablecloth, flowers, and post-wedding responsibilities must be arranged.
9. Plan a honeymoon to be remembered. Take time, this is special! Find a romantic atmosphere where you can relax and have fun. Take lots of cash. Do not scrimp, worry about the future, or complain about finances. Plan a dream, and make it come true. The worst thing that can happen on a honeymoon is to experience disappointment. Being too idealistic can cripple your joy. Alleviate this by good planning.

"My beloved is mine, and I am his."

9.2. A Wedding Format

1. Processional (Music of your choice)
2. Welcome by the minister and statement of purpose
3. Prayer
4. Giving of the bride
5. Song (your choice)
6. Devotion on marriage by the pastor
7. Vows
8. Exchange of rings
9. Song (your choice)
10. Pronouncement
11. Prayer
10. Bridal kiss
13. Recessional (Music of your choice)

Options

11. Testimonies

12. Scripture reading
13. Unity candle
14. Ring ceremony
15. Recited or repeated vows
16. Theme of your wedding
17. Songs

9.3. Decisions About Your Wedding

1. Where will your wedding be held?
2. What time will it start?
3. Who will give away the bride?
4. What songs would you like to have?
5. How many attendants will be present?
6. What is the theme of your wedding?
7. Would you like the pastor to share a special Scripture?
8. What options would you like in your wedding?
9. Will you have a reception? Where?
10. Do you want a formal or informal atmosphere at your wedding?
11. Rehearsal
12. Time
13. Rehearsal dinner time
14. Rehearsal dinner place
15. Bride and groom should arrive at least 15 minutes before attendants.

9.4. Vows

*"Thou shalt fear the Lord thy God, and serve him, and shalt swear by his name."
– Deuteronomy 6:13*

"Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain." – Exodus 20:7

*"You shall not swear falsely, but shall perform" your oaths to the Lord" -
Matthew 5:33*

You are about to enter a covenant before God and men. It is a vow that must be kept. Taking a vow is a very serious matter, and it should be considered carefully (Deuteronomy 23).

A vow is a promise or a pledge. It is said to God and witnessed by men. When taking a vow one is acknowledging the truth of His existence. That person is calling upon your Creator to witness the covenant, to sustain the covenant, and to avenge a breach of promise.

By taking a vow, a couple is pledging themselves to carry out the Biblical responsibilities of marriage. Therefore, a couple should choose their vows carefully and take them seriously. It is a promise you must keep "until Jesus comes, or until death do you part."

"The Lord bless thee, and keep thee;

The Lord make his face shine upon thee, and be gracious unto thee;

The Lord lift up his countenance upon thee, and give thee peace"

(Numbers 6:24-26).

9.5. Sample Wedding Vows

Groom: _____, do you take this woman to be your lawfully wedded wife, to love and to cherish in times sickness or in health, for richer or for poorer, for better or for worse, until death do you part.

Bride: _____, do you take this man to be your lawfully wedded husband, to love and to follow in times sickness or in health, for richer or for poorer, for better or for worse, until death do you part, or until Christ returns.



9.6. Wedding Checklist

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| ___ Place | ___ Special Furniture |
| ___ Time | ___ Decorations |
| ___ Date | ___ Keys |
| ___ (O.K.) with Minister | ___ Lots of joy |
| ___ (O.K.) Church Calendar | ___ Ushers |
| ___ Cost of rental | ___ Program |
| ___ Bridal Dresses | ___ Babysitters |
| ___ Tux colors | ___ Announcements |
| ___ Attendants chosen | ___ Marriage License |
| ___ Bouquets | ___ Doctor's Physical |
| ___ Floral Arrangements | ___ Cash |
| ___ Candles | ___ Bridal Planning Book |
| ___ Best Man | ___ Lots of smiles |
| ___ Tablecloth | ___ Reception book |
| ___ Candelabra | ___ Receptionist |
| ___ Boutonnieres | ___ Scrap book |
| ___ Lots of self-control | ___ Lots of hugs |
| ___ Rings | <u>Reception</u> |
| ___ Grooms wardrobe | ___ Cake |
| ___ Organist | ___ Punch |
| ___ Pianist | ___ Table linens |
| ___ Guitarist | ___ Punch Bowl |
| ___ Soloist | ___ Receptionist |
| ___ Sound Person | ___ Guest Book |
| ___ Longsuffering | ___ Table attendants |
| ___ Tape recording | ___ Kitchen help |
| ___ Pictures | ___ Chairs set up |
| ___ Centerpieces | ___ Clean up crew |

___ Utensils, Napkins

___ Rice

___ Paint cans

Rehearsal

___ Time

___ Place

___ Notices to Bridal Party

___ Rehearsal dinner

___ Gifts

___ Speeches

___ Honorary for parents

___ Prayer, devotional

___ Music

___ Tape recorder

___ Vows memorized

___ Camera/film

___ Lots of laughs

___ Thank you

Honeymoon

___ Car tuned

___ Clothes, towels

___ Special gear

___ Reservations

___ Plane tickets

___ Lots of cash

___ Books on "what?"

___ Groceries

___ Camera

___ Lots of tenderness

___ Dinosaur trap

___ Film

___ Thank-you notes

___ Toothbrush

___ Good joke book

___ Birth control

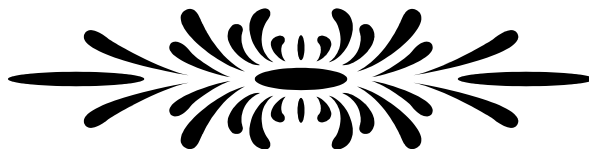
___ Lots of patience

___ Car keys

___ Shark repellent

___ Lots of smiles

AND THEY LIVED HAPPILY EVERAFTER



10. The Marriage Contract



“Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.” – Exodus 20:7

10.1. Sample Marriage Contract

Marriage Contract

MARRIAGE CONTRACT between Name of Groom and Name of Bride

The authority for this contract shall reside in the following:

Genesis 2:24 Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh.

Matthew 19:4-6 And he answered and said unto them, Have ye not read, that he which made *them* at the beginning made them male and female, ⁵ And said, For this cause shall a man leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife: and they twain shall be one flesh? ⁶ Wherefore they are no more twain, but one flesh. What therefore God hath joined together, let not man put asunder.

We hold these Truths to be self-evident, that all Men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness (The Declaration of Independence).

Unlimited Right to Contract: No State shall . . . pass any Bill of Attainder, ex post facto Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility. (United States Constitution, Article 1, Section 10).

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof . . . (Bill of Rights, Amendment I).

"The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people" (Amendment IX, Bill of Rights).

A man "owes no such duty to the State, since he receives nothing therefrom beyond the protection of his life and property" (Hale v. Henkel, 201 U.S. 43 (1906)).

" . . . the fundamental and paramount law of the nation, and consequently, the theory of every such government must be, that an act of the legislature, repugnant to the constitution, is void" (Marbury v. Madison (1803)).

" All persons are born free, and have certain natural, inherent and inalienable rights, among which are the rights of enjoying and defending life and liberty, of acquiring, possessing and protecting property, and of seeking and obtaining safety and happiness" (New Mexico Constitution, Article I, Section 4).

Declaration of Marriage

COME NOW THE UNDERSIGNED PARTIES, **Name of Groom and Name of Bride**, creations of Almighty God, having declined the option of state franchise and the disabilities associated therewith, do assert our God-given rights -- "rights reserved . . . for the People" (Amendment I; Amendment X), under the authority of Biblical Law, Common Law, as protected by the Constitution, having taken our marriage vows with the Lord Jesus Christ as our witness in the company of family and friends, do now hereby state our Declaration of Marriage to live together as Man and Wife:

We affirm that we are Citizens of the united states of America endowed by our Creator with certain unalienable rights; that we are of legal age, competent to contract; and, that we knowingly, voluntarily, and willingly entered into the Holy Estate of Marriage without state intervention, permission, or license. We affirm the Rights reserved for WE THE PEOPLE and with full authority do hereby exercise the right to marry under the laws of Almighty God.

From the date of this Declaration, we shall be known as husband and wife, Mr. & Mrs. **Name of Groom**, and the title Sui Juris shall remain with **Name of Groom** as husband, and Alieni Juris shall remain with **Name of Bride**, who shall hereafter be known as **Mrs. Name of Groom**, wife of **Name of Groom** that is, a wife subject to and under the protection of her husband by choice.

That should we bear children in this union, our desire is that they be reared lovingly under God's Law jointly with the responsibility and care of the children equally divided and sustenance maintained by both parties; that the purchase of assets in joint names, the same shall be considered as held in common tenancy. Other than debts validly contracted for services or materials or otherwise related to joint property of the Husband and Wife, if any, the Husband, Sui-Juris, shall have the right to act for, to obligate for, act for, contract for and act to the benefit of his Wife, Alieni-Juris, under the Common Law.

This is the Full Agreement of the parties and there are no agreements other than those stated herein. This agreement shall only be modified by written agreement executed by both parties hereto.

"What God has joined together, let no man put asunder" (Jesus).

Executed on the ____ day of _____, in the year of our Lord _____ "All rights reserved"

Signature of Husband _____
(Child of God)

Address _____

Signature of Wife

_____ (Child of
God)

Address _____

Witness _____

Address _____

Witness _____

Address _____

Minister of the Gospel _____

* Add amendments if this is a second marriage involving retired people who may want to pass on their assets to their sons and daughters, but still enjoy the benefits of a companionship.



10.2. Sample Wedding Ceremony

Welcome: Friends, we are gathered here to witness the uniting in marriage of Name of Bride and Name of Groom. Since it was God Himself that sanctioned marriage in the Garden of Eden, and the Lord Jesus Christ that honored it by his presence at a wedding in Cana, it is only fitting that Name of Bride and Name of Groom's wedding be one where we seek God's presence and God's blessing. On their behalf, I would like to welcome you to this holy occasion. Please join us for this holy occasion.

Invocation: Prayer

Pastor: Who giveth this woman in marriage?

Scripture Reading:

Reading: Genesis 2:18-25; Ephesians 5:22ff

Scripture text:

Genesis 2:18-25 And the LORD God said, It is not good that the man should be alone; I will make him an help meet for him . . . And the rib, which the LORD God had taken from man, made he a woman, and brought her unto the man . . . Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh . . . And they were both naked, the man and his wife, and were not ashamed. . .

Ephesians 5:22ff Wives, submit yourselves unto your own husbands, as unto the Lord. For the husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the church: and he is the savior of the body. Therefore as the church is subject unto Christ, so let the wives be to their own husbands in everything . . . (33) and the wife see that she reverence her husband.

Ephesians 5:25ff Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for it; That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word. That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish. So ought men to love their wives as their own bodies . . . For we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones. For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.

Bible Devotion:

Marriage is an institution—an institution designed by the LORD God.

Three Institutions: Marriage, Government, Church

Authority: God v. Government, the Lord God not the State

It is good not evil

Marriage is a contract—a covenant governed the God’s laws.

Contract v. Covenant. Free man and free woman.

Governed by God’s laws not man-made laws

Not a democracy.

Rules for the man; rules for the woman

Wives are to support and respect

Husband, love and protect sacrificially.

Marriage is perfected by grace-God’s Grace!

Laws are necessary, but limited. Cannot produce life.

No marriage is perfect for we are all sinners.

Love and grace must be sprinkled:

Trust and Integrity; strength and forgiveness.

Contract Offer and Acceptance

Marriage being an institution of God, a holy covenant, it is time to take your vows.

Pastor: Name of Groom, having declined state franchises will you take this woman to be your lawfully wedded wife, to live together according to God's law in the holy estate of marriage? Wilt you love and protect her, comfort and honor her, be devoted and faithful only unto her, so long as you both shall live?

He answers: I will.

Pastor: Name of Bride, having declined state franchises, wilt you take this man to your lawfully wedded husband, to live together according to God's law in the holy estate of marriage? Wilt you love him and comfort him, honor and respect him; and, forsaking all others, keep yourself only unto him, so long as ye both shall live?

She answers: I will

Holy Vows

Pastoral Charge: a vow is an oath, a holy promise. The Scripture admonishes us to take oaths in the name of the Lord (Deut. 6:13) but to not take the Lord’s name in vain for “when you vow a vow to God, do not delay in paying it, for the LORD God has no pleasure in fools” (Eccl. 5:4-6). Are you prepared to take your vows?

Name of Groom, please repeat after me: With Christ as my Witness, I give you my sacred promise: I, Name of Groom, take you, Name of Bride, to be my lawfully

wedded wife, to have and to hold from this day forward, for better or for worse: for richer or for poorer; in sickness and in health; to love and to cherish, till death us do part, by the grace of Christ according to His holy law.

Name of Groom, what do you have as consideration for your promise-? A ring
, will you take this ring and wear it as a token of Name of Groom's promise to love you as Christ loves His people and to be faithful to him always?

Name of Bride, please repeat after me: With Christ as my Witness I give you my sacred promise: I, Name of Bride, take you, Name of Groom, to be my lawfully wedded husband, to have and to hold from this day forward, for better or for worse: for richer or for poorer; in sickness and in health; to love and to cherish, till death do us part, by the grace of Christ according to His holy law.

Name of Bride, what do you have as consideration for your promise? A ring

Name of Groom, will you take this ring and wear it as a token of Name of Bride promise to be devoted to you and as a reminder to be faithful to her always?

Pastor says: Let us pray.

O Eternal God, Creator and Preserver of all mankind, Designer of marriage, and giver of all spiritual grace, the author of everlasting life: Send thy blessing upon these thy humble servants, this man and this woman, whom we honor today; that, living faithfully together, they may honor Your Holy Name by keeping their vows, covenant made with You this day. Having made this covenant we seek Your grace, and strength, and wisdom that they may ever remain in Your perfect love and Your peace together, in obedience to Your Laws, through Jesus Christ our Lord. Amen.

The Cross Ceremony. God created man to be bold and strong, a defender of His family; and, he created woman, gentle and delicate, the compliment of man. In the original wedding, God charged the man and the woman to leave, cleave, and weave; that is to leave their mother and father; to cleave to one another; and to weave together, with wishes and crosses and losses, being one as symbolized by this cross ceremony.

Pronouncement

Pastor Charge: Marriage is a contract to live together as man and wife under God's holy law. Name of Groom, God commands Christian men to love their wives as Christ loved the church giving Himself or it; and, to graciously provide for your wife. Name of Bride, God charges you to accept Name of Groom's role as head of your home, to love him and respect him.

Forasmuch as you Name of Groom and you Name of Bride, being mature in age and competent to contract, have made a holy vow before the Creator to live together in holy matrimony, and having exchanged rings as evidence of your sincerity, and being

witnessed by this company; by the authority of the Lord Jesus Christ, it is my privilege to pronounce you man and wife.

I leave you with Christ's charge: *What God has joined together let no man put asunder (Matthew 19:6).*

Bridal Kiss: You may kiss the Bride.

Announcement by Pastor: Name of Groom and Name of Bride having willingly agreed to enter into a Holy covenant under God's law, and having pledged the same to be man and wife, it is my privilege to introduce to you, Mr. and Mrs. Name of Groom.

Wedding of Name of Bride and Name of Groom

Processional: Time, date, place.



May the Lord bless and add his grace to this covenant.

It is time to reclaim marriage and re-establish Biblical marriage contracts.

For a background on the reason why we must kick the state out of marriage see:

<https://nikeinsights.famguardian.org/forums/topic/the-marriage-license-trap/>



11. Addendum

Future Resources and Principles on Which to Build a Godly Family



Figure 1: Free Upload from Uplash

"An intelligent heart acquires knowledge, and the ear of the wise seeks knowledge" - Proverbs 18:15

11.1. The Authority for Marriage



"Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh." - Genesis 2:24

By what authority do you get married, the authority of the State or the authority of the LORD God and His Law-word?

The Yoke of Licensing

Modern men have lived all their lives under the authority of the State instead of under the authority of the Lord Jesus Christ. So much so, the power and authority of Scripture has been all but lost; that is, the State has been very successful at indoctrinating Americans into believing that men must ask the State permission to marry, get a job, buy a house, or travel. Because of State propaganda through public schools and the media, modern Christians are not very sanguine about King Jesus.

Consequently, young Christians "feel" like they have to get a license and ask the State's permission to marry. Nonsense! Men have always been free to marry without permission of the government. *Young Christians need the consent of parents, but they do not need the consent of the State!* Common law is Christian law and the only law recognized in the Bill of Rights. Christians are under Lex Rex and not the law of a king (Rex Lex). All states must recognize common law or be at odds with the Bill of Rights, especially Amendments Eight, Nine, and Ten.²

When a couple applies for a marriage license, they are appealing to the State (a for-profit corporation) for its permission to marry. Further, by asking for a license, they are abdicating the law of God, surrendering their freedoms, and are agreeing to live under the laws of the god-State.

Application for a license means the couple is agreeing to be governed by the laws of these for-profit corporations acting as de facto governments. This is not all bad. Pagans need the State to govern them. ***Good Christian men do not!*** In law and in fact, couples married under State law are bound by their definitions of marriage, of the family, and their rules for

² Colorado has recognized common law marriage as legal and binding since 1877, and is one of twelve states to do so. A common law marriage is established when the parties mutually consent to be husband and wife (U.S. Marriage Laws).

raising children; that is, the State is a third party in the bedroom of their marriage.

It's time for Christians to get a divorce, and to kick the government out of their bedroom and marry under God's laws.

If a couple gets married under God's laws and enter into a Marriage Covenant, then you have his promise of blessing and sustenance . . . and you are free to raise your children under His law and His grace.

You cannot marry under God's law and State Law and be ruled by both. You cannot serve two masters. One must prevail. And, if you go to court, a Bible will not be present in the courtroom!

Definition of License

*"The permission by competent authority to do an act which without such permission, **would be illegal.**" (Black's Law Dictionary)*

Illegal? When did marriage become illegal? Since when do Christian men and women need permission from the State to marry?

Licensure for marriage in America came into being after the Civil War wherein it was illegal for a white man to marry a black woman and vice versa. Thus, a license was necessary between races--licenses granted by the State. In early America, licenses to marry were unheard of. Marriages were covenant contracts between two families, between a mature man and a mature woman. Marriages were recorded in the family Bible, not with the county clerk and the secretary of State. The only permission needed to marry was the permission of the father. But, with the rise of statism in America, licensing conquered the Christian mind.

Definition of Jurisdiction

The term jurisdiction is a question of authority: Who or what has a right to tell you what to do? Who or what has authority over your marriage or house or job or land or children? Russian police have authority in the USSR, but they do not have authority in Denver, Colorado? The Federal Government has authority in Washington D.C. and Puerto Rico, but they do not have authority over Citizens of a State unless they are in contract with the federal government. Likewise, the State does not have authority over a man's family unless the man gives the State that authority . . . and, this is what a license does. A license is a contract that grants authority to the State to rule over, annul, disapprove, or punish a man for not following State statutes.

Definitions of Marriage

Marriage is the first and most important institution created by the LORD God. It is an economic institution not only designed to perpetuate mankind, but to seal, cement, bind, unite, educate, and provide for mankind. The family is more fundamental than government or the church. When families are strong, the government and church are strong. When the family is weak, other institutions steal power.

How Christians define marriage is important for the church in order to maintain control over it. Marriage is not a creation of government. According to Genesis two, the LORD God is Creator of marriage; that is, marriage is His idea, His plan, and His design. See Genesis 2:18-25.

Marriage is not a union of two persons, but a covenant between a mature **man** and a mature **woman**, competent to contract, bound together by oath to live together as man and wife under God's law and consummated by a sexual union. A marriage must include at least three elements: (1) a man and woman; (2) a binding contract by oath; (3) a sexual union.

Since God is the Creator, Grantor, Mediator, and Sustainer who sanctions marriage, ONLY THE LORD God has a right to define marriage.

Marriage is a religious institution and the government has no authority to define religion or regulate its law-order.

Amendment I

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

Marriage is **not** two people living together under the same roof. Marriage is not a perverted union between a male and a male, or a woman and a woman. Marriage is not two people in a commercial agreement. Marriage is not two people living together under the same roof. *Shame on anyone who performs a same-sex union and calls it marriage.*

Marriage is a covenant contract between a mature man and a mature woman who agree to live together as husband and wife for purposes of marriage as ordained in God's Word. Marriage is a contract. For a Biblical marriage to be valid, there must be an offer, acceptance, consideration, and performance expectations. The difference between a State license to marry and a Biblical Covenant of marriage is that in a State contract, the State is part of the contract and the couple agrees to live under the rules of the legislature. In a Biblical Covenant, God is part of the contract wherein the couple looks to God for His assistance to marry and to conduct that relationship under His laws. In a Biblical Covenant, there is

a grant of permission by the wife's father, an offer by the man, acceptance by the woman, consideration or dowry, a formal declaration of the marriage contract, and the seal of that union by sexual consummation.

Definition of family

A family is not a school or football team or a group of fraternity brothers living in a college frat house. A family has blood relations, not emotional friendship bonds.

A family is a product of marriage--of blood relations, working together as an economic unit for the good and health of its members.

Definition of Institution

An institution is a type of organization designed for the profit of the individuals composing it. *There are three institutions in the Bible: the family, the state, and the church.* God is the author of all three of these institutions. Each institution has its duties as well as limited powers within its own jurisdiction. Each has a duty to perform their services under God's Law-word and under His authority. The family is the institution of education. The state is the institution of justice. The church is the institution of mercy charged with the stewardship of the gospel.

The family is the first Biblical Institution. It is a spiritual, lawful, economic unit designed for the health and welfare of blood relations. Its first and foremost goal is education:

Deuteronomy 6:6-9 And these words, which I command thee this day, shall be in thine heart: And thou shalt teach them diligently unto thy children, and shalt talk of them when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up. And thou shalt bind them for a sign upon thine hand, and they shall be as frontlets between thine eyes. And thou shalt write them upon the posts of thy house, and on thy gates.

Consider how the home is a place of education. It is in the home the child takes his first class in language, speaking, writing, health codes, law, judgment, food preparation, chores, work, relational skills, building, sewing, singing, music, weaving, writing, and other skills.

Intrusion by the State

Consider the problems the State causes for Biblical families and the reasons not to surrender a family to the laws of the State. If a man obtains a license to marry, the State is the third party to the contract. The State has power to intervene, demand performance, take children away

from the parents, force families to send their children to public schools, punish parents for disciplining their children for corporal punishment, facilitate divorce, demand alimony even in cases of an adulterous spouse, child care, vaccinations, birth certificates, health care, etc.

Consider how the State is changing the definition and rules of marriage to include same-sex couples and then granting homosexuals parental rights over foster children. A poison arrow, it will kill the very definition of family.

Consider how the State damages the family by over reaching its authority and expanding its jurisdiction demanding vaccinations, flu shots, and specific performance.

Consider how the State is damaging and weakening the family through taxation, women's rights, redefining marriage, redefining a family, granting homosexuals tax breaks, seeing itself as the Great Parent to all children, devising a false war on women, diminishing the rights of men, granting power for fornicating mothers to murder their babies.

In conclusion, jurisdiction refers to the right, power, and authority to act. The great question is who has authority over a marriage, the LORD God or the State? Well, it depends under what laws a marriage contract is formed. It is time for good Christian men to return to the authority of Scripture, to kick the State out of their marriages, and to incorporate under the original jurisdiction of the creative order.

11.2. Seven Elements of a Biblical Marriage

*“Wisdom hath builded her house, she hath hewn out her seven pillars” –
Proverbs 9:1*

1. A Biblical marriage involves the mutual consent and the exercise of unalienable God-given rights of an adult Christian male and an adult Christian female to live together as man and wife under the laws of God.
2. A Biblical marriage involves the mutual consent of parents.
3. A Biblical marriage involves a covenant; that is, a verbal or written contract to live together as man and wife.
4. A Biblical marriage involves solemnization; i.e., some kind of public ceremony or declaration whereby the Christian couple announces their intention to be man and wife.

5. A Biblical marriage involves invoking the presence of God (heavenly jurisdiction), his blessing, and a vow to live under His rules for marriage as set forth in the Word of God.
6. A Biblical marriage involves a sexual union following marriage vows.
7. A Biblical marriage involves independence from parents and the establishment of a new family in society living under the authority of the Headship of Christ.

[Genesis 2, 24; Matthew 19; I Corinthians 7, 11:1ff; Ephesians 5:22ff; Colossians 2:18ff); I Timothy 4:2, 3; Hebrews 13:4]

The Right of Marriage

The remaining problem is that the church gave up the high ground to *the State* in matters of Holy Matrimony decades ago by acquiescing to State licensing and forsaking the Church's First Amendment protections.

It is, therefore, imperative Christians understand their rights, reclaim them in the name of Christ, and bring all things under His authority

"That all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness; that, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed" (Declaration of Independence)

*"Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron; Forbidding to **marry**, and commanding to abstain from meats, which God hath created to be received with thanksgiving of them which believe and know the truth" (1 Tim. 2:4).*

"Because of what appear to be a lawful command on the surface, many citizens, because of their respect for what only appears to be law, are cunningly coerced into waiving their rights due to ignorance" U.S. v. Minker, 350 U.S. 179, at 187

*"Have we not power (authority) to lead about a sister, a **wife**, as well as other apostles, and as the brethren of the Lord, and Cephas?" (1 Cor. 9:5)*

*"Therefore shall a man **leave** his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh" (Gen 2:34).*

*So then he that giveth her in **marriage** doeth well (excellent) (1 Cor. 7:38).*

Marriage is honorable in all, and the bed undefiled: but whoremongers and adulterers God will judge. (Heb. 13:4)

The convention of a number of the States having at the time of their

adopting the Constitution, expressed a desire, in order to prevent **misconstruction** or **abuse** of its powers, **that further declaratory and restrictive clauses** should be added: And as extending the ground of public confidence in the Government, will best insure the beneficent ends of its institution.

Amendment I : Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

*"The individual [and, or church] **may stand upon his constitutional rights as a citizen.** He is entitled to carry on his private business in his own way. **His power to contract is unlimited.** He owes **no duty to the state** or to his neighbors to divulge his business, or to open his doors to investigation, so far as it may tend to criminate him. **He owes no such duty to the state,** since he receives nothing therefrom, beyond the protection of his life and property. **His rights are such as existed by the law of the land long antecedent to the organization of the state,** and can only be taken from him by due process of law, and in accordance with the Constitution" Hale v. Henkle, 201 U.S. 43 (1906).*

Marbury v. Madison, 5th US (2 Cranch) 137, 180. we find this: "All laws, rules and practices which are repugnant to the Constitution are null and void."

"Where rights secured by the Federal Constitution are involved, there can be no rule-making or legislation which would abrogate them."
Miranda v. Arizona, 384 US 436 (1966).

A non-licensed, Biblical marriage is 100% lawful.

License

The term license "The permission by competent authority to do an act which, without such permission, would be illegal, a trespass, a tort, or otherwise not allowable." (Black's Law Dictionary, 6th Edition, p. 920).

Q: Since when did Biblical Marriages become illegal?

Ans: Never! Licensing began after the civil war when interracial marriage increased. At that time it was unlawful to mix races, but one could apply for a license. When "licensing" became a source of income for the state and control by the state, the states jumped on the band wagon creating the illusion that in order for people to marry, they had to obtain the permission of the state. What nonsense!

Now that the state has redefined marriage to include homosexual unions, IT IS ALL THE MORE IMPERATIVE PASTORS KICK THE STATE OUT OF THE CHURCH AND RECLAIM BIBLICAL AUTHORITY FOR CHRISTIANS TO MARRY UNDER GOD'S LAWS AND NOT THE IMMORAL LAWS OF THE STATE!!

A Biblical Marriage is opposed to the following:

1. Fornication: Engagement in sexual activity between an unmarried man and woman.
2. Adultery: Engagement in sexual activity by an unmarried spouse with an alien partner.
3. Concubinage: Cohabitation of a man and woman without the benefit of contract to be man and wife.
4. Prostitution: The exchange of sexual favors for an economic benefit.
5. Homosexuality: Sexual expression and contact between two people of the same sex.

[Romans 1; I Corinthians 6:9ff; 1 Thessalonians 4:1-6;

A State Marriage Involves the Following (See Meister v. Moore 96 U.S. 76):

1. A commitment of an adult male and an adult female to live together as man and wife.
2. Permission from the state to marry via a marriage license. Thus, it becomes legal.
3. Solemnization of a verbal contract in front of a magistrate or minister with at least two witnesses present whereby the couple makes a public declaration to live together as man and wife.
4. Cohabitation as man and wife under the rules of marriage set forth by the state.
5. New Mexico has proscribed polygamy, but not "civil unions".

*A state marriage benefits society because it provides a way to solemnity marriage so as to effect the orderliness of society.

* *The State's* definition of marriage, which is now subject to change, and the licensing procedure it uses is open to attack because it leaves the One True God, who created the institution of marriage, out of the equation. To the State a marriage is any two bodies sharing the same bed.

Contrast Between A Biblical Marriage and a Secular Marriage

Subject	Christian Marriage	Secular Marriage
Parties	A man and a woman and God	A man and a woman and the state, or a man and a man and the state, or a woman and a woman and the state
Authorization	Permission of parents	Permission of the state
Jurisdiction	The church	The state
Authority	Bible and First Amendment	Statutory Regulations
Nature	Marriage is religious in nature	Marriage is humanistic in nature
Purpose	Companionship	Happiness
Consent	Mutual consent of two adults	Mutual consent of two adults
Convention	A covenant for life	A limited contract. Possibly for life
Solemnization	A public declaration to be man and wife	A public declaration to be man and wife
Evidence	May be registered in the county	Registered in the county
Official	A minister of the gospel	A minister or magistrate
Contract	Verbal or written	Usually verbal
Vows	Yes, before God	Yes, before men
Witnesses	God and people	People: at least two witnesses
Rules	God's Word	Personal feelings and pragmatism
Regulating law	The Word of God	Statutory law made by the legislature
Authority in the Home	The man	The strongest

Union	Sexual union after marriage	Sexual union often before marriage
Commitment	100% for life	50-50 as long as it works.
Basis of success	Obedience to Christ	Mutual compatibility and tolerance
Success	Happiness probable	Happiness possible
Source of success	The grace of God	Human skill and resources
Property	Important to the Christian couple	Important to the secular couple

11.3. Isaac's Marriage Contract

Genesis 24



As stated in the first lesson, the first and most important decision a man must make regarding his marriage, is what law is going to govern his family: the law of gut instinct or the law of the State or the law of Almighty God? The failure of pure devotion to God's law-order is the reason so many marriages steer into rocky reefs.

Second, as stated previously, a marriage is a contract between a mature man and a mature woman to live together under God's law as husband and wife. When two people live together without a contract, this is fornication and concubinage--a state for fools.

The issue for the Christian man is whether to contract under God's laws or State laws or a merger of the two systems which results in legal confusion.

Third, and most important, is when there is a controversy, where does a man go to gain clarity? Does he consult his own gut instincts, or his humanist friends, the State, or God's Word? Truth be known, most Christians follow their belly-button rather than the Holy Scripture.

You can gain clarity about the legal authority of marriage and the superiority of a Biblical covenant by discovering the Biblical principle and applying it to your family and set of circumstances.

Marriage is a Contract

Genesis 24 is about a search for a bride and a marriage contract. There is no more beautiful picture of a marriage proposal in Scripture than the engagement of Rebecca to Isaac. It stands out like a rose garden in the public square. It burgeons with the fruits of integrity: honorable oaths, lawful purposes, duty, discernment, prayer, dependence on God, honor, full disclosure, valuable consideration, offer, acceptance, and joyful consummation. Before us is an arranged marriage between a royal Bedouin father, and a humble, upper middle class family known as the house of Bethuel.

It is ideal in some ways in that Abraham and Isaac were part of a marvelous covenant and a grand plan for the salvation of the human race. This simply cannot be duplicated. Second, this chapter is unique in that the party of the groom was quite wealthy. This is not always the case when a man finds a potential bride.

Third, there is a bold, dynamic prayer for guidance in this chapter and a marvelous, almost larger than life answer to prayer. Many pray for light and receive it, but few come with the such thundering fulfillment as we find here. Nevertheless, the chapter abounds with human interest and lessons for Christians on a Biblical marriage.

The indispensable lesson on marriage in this chapter is that marriage is a contract between two consenting families. In any contract, there must be an offer, acceptance, consideration, and defined duty. Before us is the marriage of Isaac and Rebecca--a model marriage with a model contract. It is applied to brides, but the principle applies to finding suitable husbands as well. Consider the following lessons:

A Christian marriage is a covenant built on God's law and His sustaining grace. The title "God" is mentioned seven times (7) in Genesis 24; and, the name "LORD" is mentioned no less than twenty times (20). An oath is taken in His name; His direction was sought through prayer, and the characters in the story looked to him, talked about him, and lived under an expectation that He was guiding and leading the search. The reader can see the providence of God at work in this historical event. This is not only a contractual marriage, but a covenant marriage created by and sustained by the LORD God.

A healthy marriage has the blessing and help of parents (24:1-2): Notice that it was Abraham, the father of Isaac, who took the initiative to find a suitable wife for his son. He did not leave this decision up to Isaac. Likewise, no God-fearing son or daughter would dare think of marrying without the consent a

godly father. Fathers love their sons and only want the very best for them. A man that will not consult his father (and mother) about his bride to be drinks the hemlock of pride and arrogance. Such a decision is a draft for disaster!

A godly father looks for suitable wife among "Christian" families (24:3):

Abraham lived a separated life. Searching for a godly mate for Isaac among the Canaanites was like trying to find a pure bred poodle among hound dogs--an impossibility.

Abraham's family lived in the plains of Beersheba away from all the powerful, seductive city states in Canaan; that is, they lived apart from the corruption of the age. Finding a wife required a significant investment of time and money. For this reason, Abraham put his chief servant, Eliezer, under contract to travel and locate a suitable wife for Isaac among his clan in Haran in the northern region of Mesopotamia. Interestingly, the choice of the bride was not in the hands of Isaac, but a "matchmaker" under oath with Abraham.

The NT application of this law is that brides must be chosen from the pool of godly women: "*do not be unequally yoked with non-believers;*" that is, under no circumstances is a Christian permitted to marry outside of the faith. It was inter-marriage to pagans that diminished Israel. Likewise, the faith of a Christian man will not prevail if he is unequally yoked to a carnal woman. Holiness is not contagious; but, but the spirit of a profane woman goes viral (2 Corinthians 6:14; Nehemiah 10, 11; Ezra 9:1ff).

Finding a godly mate for a son or daughter is like searching for a white tiger in Bengal. What man would want a wife among the autonomous, radical American feminists today? The head-wobbling, in-your-face American female is her own disaster. Furthermore, searching for wife among nominal, pseudo-spiritual, subjective Christians is like tying your horse to a fire engine. Finding a Proverbs 31 woman who "dresses herself with strength," and who "fears the Lord" is a challenge indeed. But, if found "doeth him good all the days of his life" (Proverbs 31:12, 29-31).

The search for a wife involves trust (24:5-9). Obviously, Eliezer was very concerned that he might not find a suitable mate for Isaac, but Abraham assured his servant that the God of heaven would be in charge of the search and guide the process. Likewise, it would be good for fathers and sons to pray much to Almighty God to provide the right person for their sons and daughters.

Finding a wife involves prayer (24:12-14): Further, notice that Eliezer also prayed and asked God for the success of finding a good woman for Isaac. He casts himself in dependence on God for the success of his mission.

Virgins make the best brides (24:16). Eliezer looked for a woman that was "a virgin" which "no man" had spoiled. The Ashkenazi-phallic culet led media

portrays virgins as naive and unsophisticated. But, the opposite is true. Virgins make the best wives and best husbands. A sexually promiscuous woman who has given herself to dozens of men cannot have anything left to give a husband. She is broken spiritually and lacks a whole heart to share with her husband. Plagued by guilt and shame and lusts, her baggage is more than a strong man can carry. A virgin on the other hand stands ready to give her whole heart, body, and soul to her first love. A woman of integrity will save herself for her husband, and the godly man will wait for her.

Look for an industrious wife (24:18): Eliezer requested a drink of water. Rachael not only lowered her jug into the cistern and raised it again for him to drink, she offered to water all his camels. Did you know that a camel can drink up to twenty (20) gallons of water at a time? Eliezer had ten camels. Rebecca was a beautiful, pure, happy, hard-working woman--a perfect choice for Abraham's son. It appeared the Lord was guiding this servant.

Likewise, a discerning young man will look for calluses on the hands of a potential bride.

A "Christian" woman should be able to state her pedigree (24:22-25). Eliezer immediately made inquiries about her family. Rebecca was a near relative of Abraham. Like a warm fire on a cold day, Rebecca's testimony ignited Eliezer's confidence that God was guiding him. Likewise, a Christian woman should not only be able to lovingly speak about her family, but be able to state in clear terms her Christian history, her story of salvation, and her hope in the person and work of the Lord Jesus Christ. This principle is confirmed in other passages. Priests that could not prove their lineage were rejected for service by Post-Exilic leaders in Jerusalem (Ezra 2:58-63; Nehemiah 13:1-3; 24-31)

A good woman should be recognized and honored (24:22). Eliezer was so impressed with Rebecca's kindness and generosity, it was Christmas in summertime. By placing a gold ring and two bracelets on her arms, Eliezer provided an earnest consideration for the contract he was about to offer. He wasted no time and spared no expense.

When the right woman is found, make haste to get married (24:33-). After the pleasantries were accomplished, Eliezer got down to business--the business of the proposal and contract offer. He reviewed his mission to clarify any trust issues and to dispel any fears the family might have. He did not take days or weeks to secure this bride. He found the right woman and made his offer. Long engagements are a curse. If God has revealed the right woman, why wait? A man should take as long as necessary to determine the will of God regarding a bride, but once he knows the woman is the right one, make haste to get married.

Marriage is a contract (24:40-49): Notice that Eliezer makes an offer of marriage. There is complete, honest disclosure about his mission. There is no deceit. No fraud! Truth reigns! The whole family is excited and gets involved in the proposal: Laban, Bethuel, Rebecca's mother, and Rebecca. The family wants more time, but Eliezer negotiates for an immediate answer. Will Rebecca accept this offer is the great question of the whole negotiation.

Observe the **contract elements** in this marriage proposal:

The Offer: "My master said . . . take a wife for my son . . . who had led me by the right way to take the daughter of my master's kinsman for his son. Now then, if you are going to show steadfast love and faithfulness to my master, tell me; and if not, tell me, that I may turn to the right hand or to the left" (24:37-48).

Full Disclosure: There is no fraud in this contract offer; no words in small print. Eliezer discloses all the family needs to know to make a decision. The whole affair. The fragrance of truth and integrity grace all the negotiations.

Consideration: ". . . the man took a gold ring weighing a half shekel, and two bracelets for her arms weighing ten gold shekel . . . And the servant brought out jewelry of silver and of gold, and garments, and gave them to Rebekah. He also gave to her brother and to her mother costly ornaments" (24:22, 53). In contractual terms, it was consideration. In Biblical terms, it was a dowry.

Capacity of the parties: Both parties were competent, consenting adults, with a capacity to contract. The party of the groom: Abraham and Eliezer and Isaac; and the bridal party: Rebecca, Bethuel, Rebecca's mother, and Laban (brother).

Intent of the parties to contract: this is not Romantic love. Eliezer was on a mission, and he revealed his intention "*to take a wife for my son*" (24:38).

Legality and honor of the contract: There is no "small print" in this contract negotiation. Everything is above board, acceptable, and honorable per public policy and standards of the day. The whole affair shines with integrity.

Performance standards: the contract is about marriage, performing the duties of husband and wife--an understood tradition. The only issue was "when?" Rebecca's mother and her brother sought an extension of time: "*Let the girl stay for a few days,*" was their stipulation. Eliezer negotiated and pressed for an immediate decision: "*Do not delay me, since the LORD has prospered my way. Send me away that I may go to my master*" (24:33, 56).

Acceptance: "*We will call the girl and consult her wishes . . . will you go with the man? and she said, 'I will'*" (24:57-58). Brother Laban, Rebecca's mother and her father were part of the negotiations, but they did not make the decision for Rebecca as is the practice in pagan cultures. Rebecca willingly, voluntarily gave her consent to the contract offer. And, the parents gave their blessing (24:60).

Marriage needs the permission of parents, not the State: There is no filling out a license, no asking the local government for permission to marry. The marriage contract was a private matter between two families: the house of Abraham and the house of Bethuel. Marriage is germane to the institution of the family not the State.

Covenant aspect of this arrangement. The oath performed, the marriage agreement complete, the story of the marriage of Isaac and Rebecca ends with the arrival of Rebecca in Beersheba. One can only guess about the thoughts of each during the long journey and the anticipation of marrying a person they had never met. Introductions made, Isaac received Rebecca, and she became his wife . . . and he takes great delight in his new possession (24:67).

The Dowry

A dowry meant the wife became the property of the man. A Biblical marriage was always by dowry, and an important part of marriage. In one sense, a bride was purchased wherein she became the property of her husband with full rights and responsibility attached thereto. Both Rebecca and her family received gold and silver. She was purchased and became Isaac's property. The word "property" in Latin means "not common with others, owned, special . . ." As property of the husband, he had rights over his acquired wife; likewise, says Paul, the wife had rights in her husband. A denial that the wife was the man's property with a duty to provide and protect her was a breach of marriage. Likewise, a wife that failed to recognize she was the property of man was a breach of contract--rebellion against God's law-order. In the case of seduction and rape, the guilty party had to endow the girl with the dowry of a virgin. If marriage followed, he lost the permanent right of divorce (1 Corinthians 7:4,5; Exodus 22:16, 17; Deuteronomy 22:28, 29).

The wife as property was not unique to Israel. Rome considered the wife and the children the property of man, each of which could be sold in an economic depression as a remedy to ruin . . . but this kind of human trafficking was strictly forbidden in Scripture. Neither the child nor the wife was permitted to be sold into prostitution to resolve an economic crisis. Such a thought was condemned by Sabbatical laws strictly because "I am the LORD" and His law forbade it (Deuteronomy 23:17; Leviticus 19: 20-30).

Modern man balks at the thought the wife is the property of a man but thinks nothing of the State's claim upon its citizens as property of the United States. Calling Americans a "human resource" for the government is nothing more the corpse of slavery dressed in a new suit. It has always been a liberal ploy to enslave man while creating the illusion of freedom.

A dowry involved wealth and forced the man to adopt a profitable business. A dowry consisted of about three years wages. In the case with Jacob, he

worked seven years for Rachel. Paying for a wife was common practice. Jacob had to work seven years for Rachael and Leah. This fact is under appreciated by modern men, but its practice contained the highest degree of integrity.

A dowry constituted a bride's protection as well as her children's inheritance. A dowry was the family capital; her security in case of divorce due to the fault of the husband. If there were no dowry, there was no marriage. A conjugal relationship without a dowry constituted concubinage---that is, the woman became less than a "whore"--a practice forbidden in Israel (Deuteronomy 23:17).

A dowry created value; that is, the wife was considered a special treasure to be appreciated and honored. What was purchased had more value to a man than that which was taken; that is, the dowry assured the woman of future love and care. That a wife is to be greatly honored is part of Biblical case law. This system is far superior to the marriage arrangement in the west where women are viewed as sex partners or a "significant other" (1 Peter 3:7; Ephesians 5:27ff).

The dowry was a comfort to the family for their loss of a precious member the family. The loss of a daughter meant economic loss as she was a vital part of the family business. The failure to practice the dowry in the west by expecting the bride's family to give away a family member and then pay for the wedding is a double tragedy; a loss of a daughter and the loss of income.

A dowry brought honor to the wife; that is, she knew that her husband loved her because he paid the bride price. Later in history, the Jews denigrated the rights of the wife wherein men sought to diminish their partnership in the marriage.

In Ben Sira 36:14-24, the Rabbi said, "A silent wife is a gift from the Lord, and nothing is so precious as her self-discipline." But, the Scripture tells us a good wife "*opens her mouth with wisdom and in her tongue is the law of kindness.*" But even so, Biblical people carved out a society where women were treated with dignity and honor, as "*fellow heirs of the grace of life*" unknown in pagan societies . . . and this was due in part to the value men place on brides and their willingness to purchase so precious an asset to begin a family. (NRS w/ Apocrypha; Proverbs 31:26; 1 Peter 3:7).

Government policies undermine the institution of marriage and the dowry system. It is difficult to probe the complete negative impact of democratic governments upon the institution of marriage and the Biblical dowry system. Instead of providing a dowry to the bride's family, most men are forced to provide dowry payments to the state in the form of a slave taxation, a small tax on a marriage license, and a lifetime dowry / tax to the State for protection of the family. These outrages policies keeps the man and his family in a lifetime of debt and dependency on the State for sustenance. When wealth is transferred to

the State and not between families, marriages are weakened and all power is shifted to the State. Thus, the modern State is at war with the institution of marriage.

The Jurisdiction of Marriage

Do you need a license to get married? There are two jurisdictions in which couples can marry: (a) God's law, Common Law, Church Law, or Constitutional law, or (b) State law or statutory law.

People have married for millenniums without permission from the state? In modern times, Americans have seen the rise of Big Government and its intrusion into every area of life. Government even offers couples a marriage license (a tax). In the O.T. era, the only permission a man or women needed to marry was the permission of the father (Common Law). In the Christian era, clergymen assisted couples to marry under God's law (Common Law). Couples, therefore, need to determine in what jurisdiction they intend to marry.

If a couple chooses to marry under the laws of the state, they will need a marriage license. The marriage license is really a tax for the privilege of having the state be the third party in the marriage. After the wedding ceremony, the marriage license will be signed and registered at the county court house. If a couple marries under *state jurisdiction*, the marriage is between three parties: husband, wife, and state. When a couple gets a license from the state, the state has authority over the marriage and the children brought into this world. A marriage under state law is honorable, but unnecessary for those who understand the Constitution and know God's Word.

The only way the State can interfere with a marriage is if the couple gives them permission to intervene. The *marriage license* is a *permission slip* giving the government authority over the marriage.

Common Law Jurisdiction

Common law is God's law or Constitutional law. Common law supersedes statutory law.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof (Amendment I).

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people (Amendment 9).

The Constitution is the "highest law in the land." And, God's Law is supreme above all man-made laws (Acts 5:29). In other words, the

Constitution supersedes all statutory laws. Statutory laws are considered “null and void” when they contradict the Constitution.

. . . the theory of every such government must be, that an act of the legislature, repugnant to the constitution, is void. This theory is essentially attached to a written constitution, and is, consequently, to be considered by this court as one of the fundamental principles of our society. . . . (Marbury v. Madison).

When a couple marries under God’s law, they are choosing to live under Common Law. In church law, the father gives the bride away. A marriage license is not needed. Vows are taken, and the couple signs a marriage contract which states they agree to live together as man and wife as opposed to an illicit relationship. They may create a *Certificate of Marriage* which is then recorded at the county court house. The sexual union consummates marriage, and the couple becomes “one flesh” (God’s Law). In common law, no license is necessary, and the state has no right to interfere with the marriage or with how a Christian couple under God’s law chooses to raise their children. A Common Law³ marriage is a legitimate, God honoring, publicly recognized marriage.

Warning: Common law has received a bad rap from the media and the state. The State does not get excited about people marrying under Common Law, and rightly so. They lose money and they lose control.

It is important that couples not only understand God’s Law regarding marriage (Genesis 2, Matthew 19, 1 Corinthians 7), but that they understand the primacy of Constitutional Law. If they do not claim their Constitutional right to pursue “life, liberty, and happiness,” the government assumes they have yielded their rights in favor of statutory regulation. Unfortunately, you have to assert your rights to enjoy them. If you choose to marry under state law, you are yielding your rights to the government. If you choose to marry under God’s Law, you are asserting your God-given rights as secured by the nation’s constitution.

³ The term "common law marriage" has been denigrated by the State in order to usurp power over the family. By narrowing the definition of "common law marriage" to years of co-habitation instead of in its intended lawful sense as a marriage under the laws of the LORD God, the state has been able to conquer the institution of marriage. Thus, whoever controls the definition, controls the argument.

11.4. The Marriage License Trap

When you applied for a “marriage license” a private, for-profit franchise of the UNITED NATIONS doing business as the STATE OF _____ claimed a **custodial ownership interest** in your marital relationship and the products resulting from it.

On the basis of your own signature, this entity **secretively claimed to own you, your wife, and your children as chattel**. According to them, when you apply for a marriage license, the nature of the marriage contract changes and becomes a "civil contract".

*“Marriage is a civil contract to which there are three parties - the husband, the wife **and the state**.” Van Koten v. Van Koten. 154 N.E. 146.*

Did you ever **intend** to give a foreign privately owned corporation merely calling itself the STATE OF permission to distribute your assets in a divorce, force you to pay alimony and child support, and to seize custody of your minor children under armed force?

Were these results of signing a “marriage license” ever disclosed to you by the STATE?

Did the STATE disclose its identity and nature, as a franchise of a foreign, for-profit, privately owned corporation?

You were **never** required to have a marriage license to be lawfully married----but was that fact ever fully disclosed to you by the STATE?

You have the absolute right to rescind your signature from any contract that was not fully disclosed to you. Such a contract is null and void, as if it never existed at all, and all payments and other asset distributions exercised under it are subject to return to the lawful owner(s), plus reasonable interest.

You are not obligated by any contract obtained under conditions of fraud, deceit, or non-disclosure. The STATE is culpable for its failure to disclose.

Any demand that you produce a “marriage license” as a prerequisite to access services and benefits to which you are otherwise entitled---such as medical insurance coverage for your spouse --- are illegal monopoly inducements.

By Judge Anna von Reitz (Final Judgment and Civil Orders)

11.5. Jurisdiction of Marriage: Church or State?

“For the LORD is our judge, the LORD is our lawgiver, the LORD is our king; he will save us.” – Isaiah 33:22

Do you need a license to get married?

There are two jurisdictions in which couples can marry: (a) God’s law, Common Law, Church Law, or Constitutional law, or (b) State law or statutory law.

People have married for millenniums without permission from the state? In modern times, Americans have seen the rise of Big Government and its intrusion into every area of life. Government even offers couples a marriage license (a tax). In the O.T. era, the only permission a man or women needed to marry was the permission of the father (Common Law). In the Christian era, clergymen assisted couples to marry under God’s law (Common Law).

Couples, therefore, need to determine in what jurisdiction they intend to marry.

State Jurisdiction

If a couple chooses to marry under the laws of the state, they will need a marriage license. The marriage license is really a tax for the privilege having the state be the third party in the marriage. After the wedding ceremony, the marriage license will be signed and registered at the county court house. If a couple marries under *state jurisdiction*, the marriage is between three parties: husband, wife, and state. When a couple gets a license from the state, the state has authority over the marriage and the children brought into this world. A marriage under state law is honorable, but unnecessary for those who understand the Constitution and know God’s Word.

The only way the state can interfere with your marriage is if you give them permission to intervene. The *marriage license* is *your permission slip* giving the government authority over your marriage.

Common Law Jurisdiction

Common law is God’s law or Constitutional law. Common law supersedes statutory law; and, constitutional law is the supreme law of the land—a constitution built on common law – See Amendments 6-7.

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof (Amendment I).

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people (Amendment 9).

The Constitution is the “highest law in the land.” And, God’s Law is supreme above all man-made laws (Acts 5:29). In other words, the Constitution supersedes all statutory laws. Statutory laws are considered “null and void” when they contradict the Constitution.

When a couple marries under God’s law, they are choosing to live under Common Law. In church law, the father gives the bride away. A marriage license is not needed. Vows are taken, and the couple signs a marriage contract which states they agree to live together as man and wife as opposed to an illicit relationship (Appendix A). They receive a *Certificate of Marriage* which is then recorded at the county court house (Appendix B). The sexual union consummates marriage, and the couple becomes “one flesh” (God’s Law). In common law jurisdiction, no license is necessary, and the state has no right to interfere with the marriage or with how the couple chooses to raise their children. A Common Law marriage is a legitimate, God honoring, publicly recognized marriage.

Note: you will need to decide in what jurisdiction you want to be married.

Warning: Common law has received a bad rap from the media, the state, statutory attorneys, and many pastors. The state does not get excited about people marrying under Common Law, and rightly so. They lose money and they lose control.

It is important that you not only understand God’s Law regarding marriage (Genesis 2, Matthew 19, 1 Corinthians 7), but that you understand the primacy of Constitutional Law. If you do not claim your Constitutional right to pursue “life, liberty, and happiness,” the government assumes you have yielded your rights in favor of statutory regulation. Unfortunately, you have to assert your rights to enjoy them pursuant to *United States vs. Lanier on Certiori* 95-1717. If you choose to marry under state law, you are yielding your rights to the government. If you choose to marry under God’s Law, you are asserting your Constitutional rights.

Disclaimer: This is not legal advice. I am a Biblical lawyer practicing **Biblical law**. I am \, not a State Statutor giving legal advice.

“There is only one lawgiver and judge, he who is able to save and to destroy. But who are you to judge your neighbor?” - James 4:12

11.6. John the Baptist Martyr for the Definition of Marriage

“For John had said unto Herod, It is not lawful for thee to have thy brother’s wife.” - Mark 6:18



Before us is a man who died for his faith that marriage was between one man and one woman.

John the Baptist was not executed by the government because of his witness for Christ or for preaching the gospel.

He lost his head because he rebuked a government official for adopting a liberal policy of marriage.

Herod Antipas (ruled 4 B.C.-A.D. 39) married Herodias, the wife of his half-brother Philip. Herod and Herodias were the Ahab and Jezebel of the New Testament.

John the Baptist was the priestly son of Zachariah and Elizabeth, both of the Tribe of Aaron. But, he was more than a priest, he was God's High Priest and Jesus went to Him to be baptized.

John was also a prophet in the school and tradition of prophets. Jesus called him the greatest man ever born -- great in his calling and great in his character. He was more than a reed shaking in the wind, John was a rock of truth and moral courage.

What irony -- *A single man instructing a married king on the law of marriage.*

The law of the LORD God, Ruler of the nations (Psalm 22:28), forbade marriage of a man to his brother's wife while his brother was still living, as Philip was.

Herod presumed that political power placed him above the law, but John the Baptist was unafraid to speak truth to power.

Herod's marriage to Herodias was legal but not lawful. Much like our liberal legislatures, Roman custom allowed these kinds of perverted unions. But, this political marriage was unlawful and no marriage at all. It was adultery, and therefore, null and void.

This truth gnawed at Herod's soul, but Herodias's heart, two sizes too small, had no room for such a narrow view of marriage.

The gospels inform us that "Herodias harbored a grudge against *John* and wanted to kill him but was unable to do so" (Mark 6:19). In her machinations, she wanted John dead!

Eventually the opportunity for murder met malice aforethought.

At the prompting of Herodias, her dancing, treacherous, seductive daughter asked for the head of John the Baptist on a platter. Her mother did not seek wealth, she sought ultimate power (*authentio* - 2 Tim. 2:12) over the man John.

Instead of humbling himself before his cabinet and committing the lesser sin of perjury, Herod's way out of embarrassment was to murder an innocent, defenseless, righteous, holy man. It is much easier for a politician to kill an innocent citizen than it is to correct their own corruption.

John was executed by the government without having committed a crime, without a *corpus delecti*, without a trial by jury, without due process, without witnesses testifying against him, without probable cause, and without being able to summon witnesses in his favor. His beheading was the exercise of raw arbitrary power unrestrained by law.

Today our society is saturated not only with unlawful marriages, but with unnatural civil unions. This king and queen didn't believe God's rules of marriage applied to them. Western societies today have rejected the laws of nature and nature's God. In fact, government officials deny there are any rules at all. Elites seem hell-bent on creating a society based on the unshackled desires of sensual man. Marriage is whatever the legislators want it to be, and they expect the rest of society to embrace whatever they call "marriage" -- or, be sanctioned for it.

Like John the Baptist, Christian people are called to speak the truth to those in power.

But, speaking the truth about marriage may result in some type of social martyrdom: isolation, rejection, castigation, and even demotion in the workplace. In a day of censorship by the liberal left, it won't be long before those who speak against political policy are fired, fined, and jailed— especially when those in power find the truth deplorable.

The term martyr means "witness" and today the church needs witnesses who will condemn the unlawful, perverted agenda of the LGBTQ community and those who lead them from the towers of power. We need witnesses for the Biblical law of marriage. May God raise up such martyrs in our time.

Our Lord said "blessed are those who are persecuted for righteousness" including those who condemn homosexual unions.

Be blessed, stand against public policy, and speak the truth.

11.7. The Truth Behind Mixed Marriages

" . . . they shall mingle themselves with the seed of men: but they shall not cleave one to another, even as iron is not mixed with clay." - Daniel 2:43

In recent times, we are being propagandized by media Zionist commercials touting the happiness of mixed marriages while at the same time the Jewish community only marries within its own.

In 2010 a study found, "A record **15.1%** of all new marriages in the United States were between spouses of a different race or ethnicity from one another."

On June 12, 1967, the Loving v. Virginia ruling said states couldn't bar whites from marrying non-whites.

Fewer than 1 percent of the nation's married couples were interracial in 1970. However, from 1970 to 2005, the number of interracial marriages nationwide has soared from 310,000 to nearly 2.3 million, or about 4 percent of the nation's married couples, according to U.S. Census Bureau figures. In 2005, there were also nearly 2.2 million marriages between Hispanics and non-Hispanics.

The truth about mixed marriages needs to be exposed. Far from finding a pot of gold at the end of the rainbow, black and white marriages are more of a pile of rocks than a bowl with polished yellow coins.

Consider the article by Mike Walsh, "***THE SINISTER CABAL BEHIND RACE-MIXING COMMERCIALS***" of which only a portion is recorded here (June 28, 2018, This is Europa).

"Ethnic-Europeans, who make up 95% of the smallest continent, are baffled by the sinister anti-White propaganda displayed in commercial advertising. Propaganda promoting mixed-race relationships, particularly white women with black men, has become so general, even the least observant have begun to notice.

Based on small glimpses of marketing sub-culture, one might assume half or more of all relationships involve some sort of race-mixing. The combination of white women with black men is the most common mixed-race couple depicted in race-hate advertising.

If race diversity advertising was truly about appealing to the greatest number of customers or potential customers, it seems an odd strategy to focus so much on one combination, while ignoring so many others. This suggests a sinister and subliminal purpose behind the race mixing trend.

The Mixed Race Ideal is a Lie

Research reveals that ethnic-Europeans are the least likely to marry outside of their race. Mixed race relationships are provably flawed. In terms of combined average incomes of interracial marriages, black husbands with white wives

earned the lowest amount of any other combination. The black husband and white wife combination were also the least educated.

Of the interracial combinations, marriages between whites and blacks were found to be the least stable, and the most likely to result in divorce. The divorce rate is higher in *all* interracial marriages for white women relative to a white marriage.

A study of over two million online dating interactions revealed distinct racial preferences between groups. White women are strongly against race-mixing, they respond most frequently to white men and least frequently to black men. In light of this data, it is all the more bizarre that the combination of a white woman with a black man is seen so frequently in advertising.



Race Bastardisation has Proved to be a Cataclysmic Failure

Sexually transmitted disease rates per the 2016 Centre for Disease Control speak for themselves. A 2015 study examined the outcomes of women that have children with black men, the results were staggering. Currently, 70% of black children are born out of wedlock; however, when the mother is white and the father black, the rate jumps to 97%. 98% of white mothers studied reported the father does not support their children financially, 97% report the father is not in the child's life, and 97% of the women have used welfare to help support themselves and their children. Only 10% of women that have children with black men out of wedlock end up marrying. The vast majority of white women that have children with black men live far below the poverty line.

A 2013 study of intimate partner violence in relationships, surveyed nearly ten-thousand people, the authors hypothesized that interracial couples experience higher levels of violence compared to same race relationships. They found that compared to white relationships, *both* black couples and interracial couples experience statistically significant higher levels of relationship violence.

Partner violence is classified as threats, physical, or emotional violence between two people in a committed relationship. The National Centre for Injury Prevention and Control estimates that relationship violence costs around \$4.1 billion a year in medical and mental health care costs.

Identifying White Suckers

Idealistic youth lacks discernment; the younger the cohort, the more likely they were to say the increase of interracial marriage is for the better. Liberals were more likely than conservatives to say interracial marriages are for the better. College graduates were also more likely to support the same fanciful nonsense.

A noted researcher says that after a considerable amount of spent time in academia he concludes that the longer one spends in academia, the more apt one is to be indoctrinated by critical theory. There is likely also a self-selection bias at work as well. Those who are more likely to buy into the narrative of critical theory are more likely to thrive in an environment that echoes their sentiments.

Race Destruction

Pew Research 2010 found that 69% of people surveyed said that single women having children is a bad thing, 43% say unmarried couples raising children is a bad thing, yet hypocritically only 14% say interracial marriage is a bad thing. There is something particularly dumb about being in favour of interracial relationships, while at the same time conceding the self-destructive outcomes of those relationships.

Research reveals that whites are the least likely to marry outside of their race. When white women marry outside of their race they are more likely to be abused, to become single-mothers, live in poverty, and that whites dating outside of their race exposes us to a higher chance of contracting a sexually transmitted disease.

We know that despite fashionable acceptance, white people continue to show a natural disgust response to interracial relationships. We also know that despite the tsunami of diversity propaganda in films, television, and in advertisements, same-race couples are still the most common relationships, by far.

Malice Behind Mixed Race Propaganda

Few believe that interracial advertising under the guise of “diversity” is about selling clothes or laundry detergent or cereal. The real purpose of mixed race advertising is to present a distorted worldview, to humiliate, to mock whites, and to make complacent.

White men are the last vanguard against the intrigues of an ethnic group who historically hate Europeans. ***White women are displayed with non-white men not to sell items but as a tactic of psychological warfare against European culture and civilization.***

For the rest of the article see,
<https://europeansworldwide.wordpress.com/2018/06/27/the-sinister-cabal-behind-race-mixing-commercials/>

11.8. The Desire of Women

“Unto the woman he said, I will greatly multiply thy sorrow and thy conception; in sorrow thou shalt bring forth children; and thy desire shall be to thy husband, and he shall rule over thee.” - Genesis 3:16



The woman is Eve. The Hebrew word for man is *ish* and the Hebrew word for woman is *ishshah*. There are only two genders of mankind (*anthopos*): *ish* and *ishshah*, male and female, man and woman.

In the home, the man is the king and the woman is the queen . . . and a true king treats the queen very well because the queen is his *ishshah yapha* or “beautiful woman.”

God announces his judgment on Eve for enticing her husband into sinning against God and for her failure to maintain a subordinate role to her husband.

The words “sorrow” (*etseb*) refers to the labor / pain of child birth and the complications that follow. The English use exclamation points, darkening letters, italics, and underlining terms to emphasize the importance of a word or phrase in a sentence. Using the term “sorrow” twice is the Spirit’s way of emphasizing a truth; that is, double usage of a word is God’s exclamation point (!) in Hebrew.

The phrase “thy desire shall be to thy husband” should be translated, ***“Thy desire shall be to rule over your husband.”***

The word “desire” means “craving, longing, or hunger.” In Genesis 4:7 the verbal construction refers to sin’s desire to rule over Cain.

Consider this truth: Just as a woman cannot prevent the pains of child birth coming upon her, she can’t prevent the urge to control her husband. Everything within a woman wants dominion over man. Her desire to conquer, command, control, criticize, and dominate a man is a Herculean force within every woman. If left unchecked, women will destroy men, marriage, and every organization of which she is part. She can’t eradicate this impulse. For this reason Scripture warns men, “It is better to live in a corner of a roof than in a house shared with a contentious woman.” (Proverbs 21:9). Moreover, the Scripture forbids a woman to pastor or teach men in church (1 Timothy 3:12ff).

Practical Application: For women this means the God-fearing woman must diligently seek the Lord God and surrender to His law-order. While a woman can’t eradicate this impulse burning from within, she can resist it, fight it, and

control it; that is, she must be filled with the Spirit , to control her tongue (James 3:8), and to speak with wisdom (Proverbs 31:26).

Moreover, women have no authority in Scripture to lead her marriage, the church, or a nation. Every woman doing so is in rebellion against God.

Do not hear what is not being said. This order does not forbid a woman from advising her husband or attempting to persuade him regarding a decision that must be made in the affairs of marriage. It simply means she can't resort to manipulation and extortion to achieve her wish. Every good man listens to the love of his life knowing he must make decisions that are good for the family and to accept responsibility for decisions made.

For men this means the man must recognize the women's desire and not surrender to an eruption of this trait in marriage as Adam did with Eve. Secondly, the man must accept responsibility to lead his wife righteously and lovingly. Irresponsibility and bad decisions only fuel the flame of conflict. Giving in to the desires of an aggressive wife and not accepting responsibility for leadership are two sins the man must avoid.



The Remedy: The phrase “he shall rule over thee” is the practical remedy for the usurpation of woman over the man.

The first commandment for women in marriage is “to submit to her husband,” that is to accept the role of a subordinate to her authority in marriage (Ephesians 5;24) and to honor her head. This includes, but is not limited to wearing a head covering (the symbol of authority) on her head in church (1 Corinthians 11:1-16).

The underlying reason for this law-order is an inherent weakness at work within all women: “And Adam was not deceived, but the woman being deceived was in the transgression.” (1 Timothy 2:14). And, the problem with deception is the deceived does not know they are deceived. The proneness of women to deception is not what women want to hear, but they must. Modern clap trap by feminists expose the deception and the full scale war against men. No, this is not male chauvinism at work here. This is what the Word of God teaches.

Moreover, this demands means that a God-fearing man must accept responsibility to lead and care for his wife. Following God's law-order in marriage requires diligence from both the husband and the wife.

Control your desires or your desires will control you.

11.9. A Warning About Odious Women

Proverbs 31:21-23

"I have never met a woman that confessed she was an odious woman . . . yet, all the women in my church are contentious, controlling women" – Pastor Shalom.



The Book of Proverbs is about obtaining wisdom, and a priority part of wisdom is discerning the character of women.

That Solomon thought it necessary to educate his son about the "strange" and "odious" woman cannot be denied. In fact, the Book of Proverbs ends with Solomon's observation that, "Charm is deceitful, and beauty is vain, but a woman who

fears the Lord is to be praised." It does not end with "fools are many, but a faithful man, who can find?"

Keep in mind, Solomon was not a male chauvinist but the wisest man of his time. The Queen of Sheba left her country to come and hear his wisdom. And, we would do well to listen to the insights of Solomon.

It is the duty of fathers to train their sons "in the way they should go" and warn their sons about odious women (1:8; 22:6). Not all women are odious, but some are . . . and, they can grieve the whole world.

Because we live in a world that idealizes women in glossy photo accentuating their physical attributes, young can grow up with a utopian view of women to their own harm. The Bible neither denigrates nor glorifies women. It tells the truth about the nature of the "fairer sex" . . . and, that nature is not flattering. Thus, godly men must discern the nature of women and then teach the truth about women to his sons in order to save them from the "spider's web."

Solomon was a responsible father and as a father he warned his son about the kind of women no man can live with. One of them was the "odious woman." Earlier in Proverbs, He warned his son about the seductress. She is called the "strange" woman. Here he warns him of the odious woman who is a stranger to God's Household (Proverbs 22:14; 23:33; Hosea 5:7)

Proverbs 30:21 For three things the earth is disquieted, and for four which it cannot bear:

Proverbs 30:22 For a servant when he reigneth; and a fool when he is filled with meat;

Proverbs 30:23 For an odious woman when she is married; and an handmaid that is heir to her mistress.

In describing the odious woman, the original text contain four words.

The word "married" is the Hebrew word *baal* which means "married" or "to be ruled over" by a husband. It is translated "a man's wife" in Genesis 20:3.

In English the word "odious" refers to something repulsive.

In Hebrew the word "odious" (saw-nay') means "hateful." It is used of men who hate God (Exodus 20:5) and their fellow man (Genesis 37:4). Thus, the odious woman is a bitter, resentful woman that hates God, His law-order, and men. Adjectives like proud, insolent, and witchy come to mind.

Notice, Solomon is not talking about the unmarried, single woman with bad character. He addresses the married woman. There is something about marriage (authority) which detonates her nuclear impudence.

Notice the effect. Four things make the earth tremble. One of them is the odious woman. The odious woman has a tonnage of hate: ". . . the earth is disquieted" (*ragaz*) and "cannot bear" her.

Look at verse 21: The Hebrew word "*disquieted*" means "to tremble, quake, rage, quiver, and be agitated or to quiver."

Notice the enlarged effect. Not only can a husband not live with an odious wife no one on earth can live with her either. The world trembles and quakes because of her.

The Hebrew word "bear" (*nasa*) means "to carry, lift up, or to bear." The adverb "cannot" negates the verb; that is, the earth cannot tolerate an angry woman. No one on earth has the strength to endure this woman. Think of Jezebel, Athaliah, Vashti, and Herod's wife.

No, Solomon is not a male chauvinist. He was being a good, observant father.

Knowing this, Solomon warned his son: Beware of the odious woman who is filled with hate and whose tongue is set on fire by hell. Neither you nor anyone else can live with a woman that hates God and his law-order.

In contrast to odious women, Solomon pens his masterpiece on God-fearing women in chapter 31. Pious women having the mind of Christ are beautiful, wonderful people to be around. So wonderful is the godly wife, men will go to war and die for them.

Finally, consider the earthly hell created by the feminist movement that manufactures odious woman who hate God, hate men, and hate the Ten Commandments. If the earth cannot endure the odious woman, what kind of

insanity has gripped society to elect odious women to the office of prime minister, governor, or congress?

(Source: Stockton, Pursuit of Piety).

(1) Sophisticated: worldly-wise; not naive; manipulative and misleading; complex and intricate

Proverbs 23:33 Thine eyes shall behold strange women. and thine heart shall utter perverse things.

(4) Notice the effect on men under the spell of a strange, odious woman ((feminists). According to the New Living Translation, he “will see hallucinations, and . . . say crazy things;” that is, the man who listens to feminists will be talking about whether it is right to kill babies at six or nine months old, and whether there are two genders or ninety-seven; the virtues of gender choice; and how democracy demands public schools bring in drag queens to entertain kids in the public school.

(5) Men are naturally attentive to the shapes and curves of beautiful women. Thus, Solomon helps men distinguish between natural beauty and the inner beauty of a Godly woman: “”Charm is deceitful, and beauty is vain, but a woman who fears the Lord is to be praised” (Proverbs 31:30).

(6) So difficult is it for young men to discern the difference sexy women and saintly women, He ends his book of wisdom with precious description of women in God’s Household, women who fear the Lord (Proverbs 31) — women that are as rare as diamonds on a sidewalk. Solomon found the rare faithful man, but he did not find any virtuous women in Israel during his time (Ecclesiastes 7:28).

(7) In looking at odious woman consider the following famous people: Wife of Potipher, Jezebel, Athalia, wife of Herod, Herta Bothe (WWII), saddist of Stutthoff; Ilse Koch, Queen of Buchenwald (WWII); Margaret Higgins Sanger, Betty Friedan, Elizabeth Taylor, Hillary Clinton, Nancy Pelosi, Gloria Steinam, Kamala Harris, Michelle Brisham (NM), Lori Lightfoot (Chicago), Grethcen Whitmer (Michigan), Jacinda Ardern (New Zealand), Penny Wong (Australia), Julia Gillard (Australia), Queen Elizabeth, Angela Merkel (German), and Ursula Gertrud von der Leyen (German); Helle Thorning-Schmidt (Denmark); Tarja Halonen, (Finland), Lena Waithe (stress), Whoopie Goldberg (actress), Joy Behar (the View), Glenn Wolfe; and generally speaking consider the news anchors for ABC, NBC, CBS, FOX, MSNBC, CNN. For them, “**the earth is disquieted.**”

(8)) Not one woman in God’s Household is odious. Though at differing stages of spiritual maturity, all fear the Lord. All trust Christ. All are subject to God’s law-order.

11.10. The Truth About Pornography

"Dearly beloved, I beseech you as strangers and pilgrims, abstain from fleshly lusts, which war against the soul" – 1 Peter 2:12

"Oh, be careful little eyes what your see?"



-Sex is a gift from God, but it is not a spectator sport.

-Porn is not about sex, but lust, shock, and money.

-There is no romance or love in pornography.

-Ironically, watching porn is related to problems with arousal, sexual performance, confidence, and erectile dysfunction (Voon, V., et al. (2014). Neural Correlates of Sexual Cue Reactivity in Individuals with and without Compulsive Sexual Behaviors, *Plus ONE*, 9(7), e102419. doi:10.1371/journal.pone.0102419).

-Watching porn wars against the soul and destroys the virtue of self-control (1 Peter 2:11).

-Porn is lie about women, sex, and love.

"Sex-packed porn films featuring freshly-dyed blondes whose evocative eyes say "I want you" are quite possibly one of the greatest deceptions of all time. Trust me, I know. I did it all the time and I did it for the lust of power and the love of money." (CBN, Shelly Lubben, former porn actress)

-Porn is addictive, and it rewires the brain making it less active and even dysfunctional. (The Brain on Porn. *JAMA Psychiatry*, 71(7), 827-834.)

-You cannot watch porn and pray, but you can pray and not watch porn.

-Obscenity is filled with perverse sex, Sodomy, and Lesbianism.

-Porn is a lie about what's important in life. There is more to life than sex, but porn sends a message that there is nothing more important than maximum gratification of one's sexual desires.

-Porn is not real. There is no sickness, or death, or suffering in pornography.

-Porn does not make you a better, more noble person.

-It creates dissatisfaction with your body, your partner, and your sex life-- especially for men.

-It drives you away from God and into idolatry. Porn is an idol with values opposed to the law of God.

-Porn is a frontal assault on Christianity, marriage, and the family.

-There are no morals or virtue in pornography. In fact, there are no unacceptable behaviors in porn.

-Porn is created by Jewish antichrists to demoralize the West.

-It puts ideas into your mind, and may lead some to commit sex crimes.

-Women are not victims in pornography, they are predators using their prey for money, power, and drugs.

"I never liked sex. I never wanted sex and in fact I was more apt to spend time with Jack Daniels than some of the studs I was paid to "fake it" with." . . .

As we continue to traumatize ourselves by making more adult films, we use more and more drugs and alcohol. We live in constant fear of catching AIDS and sexually transmitted diseases" (CBN, Shelly Lubben).

-Sex in marriage is a beautiful thing, but porn is the graffiti that mars it.

-Sex is good and wholesome, but porn makes sex dirty and obscene.

-Porn distorts reality creating ideals about human sexuality that no woman, or man, can live up to.

-Porn is not art. Obscenity shows us the worst of humanity.

-Prostitutes and pimps in the porn industry do not make good marriage partners.

-It is difficult to fail at being a porn actress, but it is not difficult to catch a sexually transmitted disease.

-The big secret in the porn industry is that porn kills.

"But the porn industry wants YOU to think we porn actresses love sex. They want you to think we enjoy being degraded by all kinds of repulsive acts. The truth, porn actresses have showed up on the set not knowing about certain requirements and were told by porn producers to do it or leave without being paid. Work or never work again. Yes, we made the choice. Some of us needed the money. But we were manipulated and coerced and even threatened. Some of us caught HIV from that coercion. I personally caught Herpes, a non-curable sexually transmitted disease. Another porn actress went home after a long night of numbing her pain and put a pistol to her head and pulled the trigger. Now she's dead." But the porn industry wants YOU to think we porn actresses love sex. They want you to think we enjoy being degraded by all kinds of repulsive acts.

The truth, porn actresses have showed up on the set not knowing about certain requirements and were told by porn producers to do it or leave without being paid. Work or never work again. Yes, we made the choice. Some of us needed the money. But we were manipulated and coerced and even threatened. Some of

us caught HIV from that coercion. I personally caught Herpes, a non-curable sexually transmitted disease. Another porn actress went home after a long night of numbing her pain and put a pistol to her head and pulled the trigger. Now she's dead. (CBN, Shelly Lubben)

-Pornographers do not contribute to the building a nation, they weaken and destroy all that is precious and worth preserving.

-Porn is a booby-trap to snare youth and to turn them away from Christ.

-Sex is the wine in marriage, but pornography is a toxin that poisons it.

-Porn is not about freedom but slavery

-Porn should be banned as the production of obscenity does not have Biblical sanctions or First Amendment protections; that is, a responsible Congress and President will push porn back into the shadows with the force of government.

-Porn is not about free speech. It is about making money from a crime.

-Pornography is not protected by the First Amendment because there are limits to "free speech." As you cannot run into a crowded theater and yell "fire", you cannot flash porn scenes in public. The First Amendment protects political speech, but it does not protect obscenity (Meese Report, 1986).

-Porn is the fast food service for those on their way to hell (1 Corinthians 6:9, 10).

-The Bible is not opposed to nudity, it is opposed nakedness. The garden was the starting block of human history, not the goal of history.

-“How do I know pornography depraves and corrupts? It depraves and corrupts me” (Malcolm Muggeridge)

-“Pornography exists for the lonesome, the ugly, the fearful - It's made for the losers” (Rita Mae Brown)

-Porn is for losers, not winners; for takers, not givers; for the depressed and pessimistic, not the happy and optimistic.

-Porn makes you dissatisfied with your body parts.

-Consuming pornography does not lead to more love, but to more lust.

- The problem with porn is not that it shows too much but it shows too little about the actors and their soul problems.

-There is nothing "gay" about porn. It is about fake happiness.

-Porn does not expand your thinking and ability to reason, it reduces your thought life to libido in limbo.

-Most likely, the porn industry is not going away anytime soon. The Jews control the porn industry. Any legal move to censor porn, is seen as a legal attack on Jews. The one who condemns the porn industry is most like to be branded a racist and anti-Semite. The last person that tried to ban porn from his country found himself in a World War being attacked by London, Paris, Moscow, and Washington D.C.--a war created by international Jewry, the ones who ran the porn industry.

-Porn has to be fought personally and individually, man to man, person to person. Either you are fighting against porn, or you are a victim of it!

- "You must be the change that you wish to see in the world."

- Grow up and stop loving fictions. Love real people with real flaws and real defects.

-Either you are an enemy of porn and a friend of God, or a friend of porn and an enemy of God.

(Source: New Mexicans Against Pornography / NikeInsights)

11.11. Tattoos Are a Form of Idolatry



"Thou shalt have no other gods before me." - Exodus 20:3

"Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth" - Exodus 20:4

"Speak unto all the congregation of the children of Israel, and say unto them, Ye shall be holy: for I the LORD your God am holy . . . Ye shall not make any cuttings in your flesh for the dead, nor print any marks upon you: I am the LORD." Leviticus 29:2, 28

"Little children, keep yourselves from idols." - 1 John 5:21

Tattoos are a curse for the person receiving them because they are a product of an idolatrous spirit working in the soul.

The Scriptures proclaim one absolute God and one absolute law order.

The premise that we live in a multi-universe with multiple law orders is a product of polytheism – a legal positivism that denies the existence of One Absolute God.

America has become more and more pluralistic adopting the omnistic notion that every man is free to choose his own religion and the kind of law that will govern his own life. Thus, the visible evidence that America has rejected Christianity and become polytheistic is tattoos on arms, hips, and legs.

Multiculturalism (polytheism) is not a strength, but a weakness to overcome.

Few things are more derelict than the presumption that a Christian is at liberty to choose his own law-order. Since America has moved away from Christian traditions to a humanistic culture, tattooed people are everywhere.

Tattoos are a product of idolatry; that is, they are very religious. At the time a person obtains a tattoo, their icon represents that person's highest value – a product of their cultic, humanistic, polytheistic religion – making one's self one's own god! When every man makes his own gods and his own laws, society descends into anarchy and totalitarianism.

The LORD God forbids Christians to procure a tattoo, because tattoos are acts of idolatry – a violation of the 1st & 2nd Commandment.

To tolerate tattoos among Christians is to subsidize it.

If one has a tattoo, they will need to repent deeply of sin of idolatry.

11.12. **The Virtuous Woman**

Proverbs 31:10-31

ac' m.yl ymiä lylyx;â-tv,ae(

The virtuous woman is the Biblical model for all Christian women in every age and every culture! She is set in contrast to the seductive vixen that robs men of virtue and drains them of manliness in verse 3.

Possibly, Lemuel is describing the golden assets of his queen mother.



All Christian women are aware of this passage of Scripture. Most chuckle when they read it, but very few take it seriously. Most women do NOT want to be like this precious gem. Modernists want to be a cross between the painted women on the front cover of *Cosmopolitan Magazine* and Jessica

Rabbit. Great Christian women are a cross between Betty Crocker and Virgin Mary.

Furthermore, feminists in the church hate the Proverbs 31 model (29:10) because their own pea-size brains pumped full of secular nonsense tells them that to be important they must escape kitchen duty and do the paper shuffle in the push and shove of Wall Street.

See Titus 2, 1 Timothy 3, and 1 Corinthians 11:1-16 for NT references regarding the woman's roll.

Her value

10 Who can find a virtuous woman? for her price is far above rubies.

Two assets are more valuable than rubies: wisdom and the virtuous woman or *ishshah tzaddika*:

Job 28:18 No mention shall be made of coral, or of pearls: for the price of wisdom is above rubies.

"Who can find a virtuous woman?" The word "virtue" (*chayil*) is used twice in Proverbs (12:4; 31:10) and it refers to one's strength and virtue. The word is translated "wealth" in Genesis 34:29; "army" in Exodus 14:4, 9; courage in Numbers 24:18; and to strike fear into the nations in Deuteronomy 2:25.

This is a question. The answer is closer to "nobody" than "somebody." Neither David nor Solomon found this prize (Ecclesiastes 7:26), but Boaz and Elkanah discovered these treasures in Ruth and Hannah (Ruth 2; 1 Samuel 1-2).

A man can't buy this gem, he's not rich enough . . . and besides, she's not for sale.

Her trustworthiness

11 The heart of her husband doth safely trust in her, so that he shall have no need of spoil.

The virtuous woman holds the heart of her husband in the palm of her hands. It is hers to crush or hers to set free to be the man God calls him to be. She chooses freedom for him and a life of service for herself. Taking up the cross, she follows God's will for her life. What a gem?

It is not easy for a man to be emotionally vulnerable and to trust his wife with his precious all . . . but this man did. Likewise, it is not easy for woman to let go of the reigns over her husband . . . but this woman did. In so doing, she overcame the curse of Eve and her natural impulse to micromanage her husband (Genesis 3:16). But, it gets better still. Not only did she let go of her impulse to control her husband, she submitted herself to him as head of the home and let him guide her.

Her good

12 She will do him good and not evil all the days of her life.

Instead of being a harping bloodsucker that drains a man of his will to live, this woman improved the man by ministering to his needs and bringing joy into his life. This woman pursued his interest and promoted his honor.

Men are easy to please as they only have three basic needs: respect, affection, and a hot meal. Most wives can't fulfill any of these, but virtuous women meet all of their husband's needs and then some.

Her hands

13 She seeketh wool, and flax, and worketh willingly with her hands.

The outstanding feature of this woman was not her lips or her hips, but her cracked and chaffed hands. The Spirit draws attention to this woman's hands which He mentions six times in this passage. He mentions no other physical features of this woman. Why?

She did not have painted finger nails nor would her hands make it on the cover of *Be Youthful Magazine*. Her palms showed evidence of love: short broken nails, chapped, calloused, cut and rough from milking goats, weaving blankets, sewing clothes, cooking meals, washing dishes, making candles, and brushing her children's hair with a smile on her face. This woman had no tattoos on her hips. The scars on her hands and her work in the home declare her honor.

Her commercial skills

14 She is like the merchants' ships; she bringeth her food from afar.

This woman is a shopper's shopper with coupons in hand and with an eye for quality products at reasonable prices. "Ships" is plural. This patron visits local farmer's markets, camel caravan markets, and shipping-freight markets in search of merchandise for her family.

Her daily habits

15 She riseth also while it is yet night, and giveth meat to her household, and a portion to her maidens.

This matron is an early-bird rising before the rooster crows to prepare meals for her husband, children, and servants.

Modern women don't have handmaids, they have mechanical servants: washing machines, dryers, electric lights, refrigerators, vacuum cleaners, and other tools that service the needs of a household.

Her investment savvy

16 She considereth a field, and buyeth it: with the fruit of her hands she planteth a vineyard.

She is not a careless and reckless spender, but a careful investor that knows how to navigate on the rough seas of commerce. An acute observer of real estate sales and market trends, she unilaterally purchases usable property -- a vineyard to grow grapes and to supply the needs of her family. The Spirit mentions her precious hands a second time. This time they are in the dirt.

Her strength

17 She girdeth her loins with strength, and strengtheneth her arms.

This description is not a reference to her muscles or her physical strength . . . but to her moral courage. Often tired, she had to force herself to do chores -- a sign of mind over matter, and the will over the cravings of the body.

Her work day

18 She perceiveth that her merchandise is good: her candle goeth not out by night.

Acquiring good merchandise informs us this is not a bland Walmart dog wag wearing spandex suckin' on a bottle of Mountain Dew, but a woman with discriminating tastes -- a matron in pursuit of excellence. We learn she is not only an early bird but a night owl. Sleep? Yes, she sleeps, but it doesn't control her.

19 She layeth her hands to the spindle, and her hands hold the distaff.

This beauty mastered the spinning wheel like modern wives excel in sewing skills. She's a pragmatist, not a dreamy idealist trying to solve the problems in international politics with no ring on their left hand.

Under like modern women who have divided loyalties to a husband, family, friends, bosses, church organizations, and political party promotions, this woman is focused on her family -- and God has special rewards for these kind of women.

Her kindness

20 She stretcheth out her hand to the poor; yea, she reacheth forth her hands to the needy.

This woman is not a self-centered narcissist, she is moved with compassion for the poor and does all she can to relieve their suffering.

Her provision for the family

21 She is not afraid of the snow for her household: for all her household are clothed with scarlet.

This woman clothes her family in raiment fit for a royal family. "Scarlet" is the regal color of kings. Even the color "scarlet" feels warm.

Her regal dress

22 She maketh herself coverings of tapestry; her clothing is silk and purple.

"coverings" and "tapestry" refer to blankets and bed coverings. She is clothed -- a modest woman dressing in the finest fabrics; that is, she clads herself in feminine vestments fit for a queen.

Her husband and his status

23 Her husband is known in the gates, when he sitteth among the elders of the land.

Her care in the home frees her husband to take part in legal and commercial matters at the city gates.

Her home business

24 She maketh fine linen, and selleth it; and delivereth girdles unto the merchant.

She not only makes clothes for her family, but she has a wholesale business providing homemade clothing to city merchants.

Her character and confidence

25 Strength and honour are her clothing; and she shall rejoice in time to come.

"Strength" and "honor" refer to her sparkling character. Because she works and supplies the needs of her family she not only has no fear of the future, the joy of her accomplishments and the pride in her work twinkle with confidence on her happy face.

Her kind wisdom

26 She openeth her mouth with wisdom; and in her tongue is the law of kindness.

Because of the chatty nature of most women, Rabbis teach that a good woman is silent. This woman was not a chatterbox nor did she take a vow of silence. When she opens her mouth, she speaks with gold-plated wisdom.

Her focus

27 She looketh well to the ways of her household, and eateth not the bread of idleness.

This woman captures the attention of the Spirit from his watchtower in heaven because of the efficient and refreshing manner in which she balances her duties

and manages the details of her domestic calling. By using the verb "looketh well" and the noun "bread of idleness" the Spirit draws attention to this woman's intelligent perceptions and her dutifulness to prosper her family business.

Her praise

28 Her children arise up, and call her blessed; her husband also, and he praiseth her.

Neither her husband or her children are mumbling moaners; rather, they only have platinum praises for this cherished mother. All their thoughts about this golden treasure to the family tastes like honey.

Her excellence

29 Many daughters have done virtuously, but thou excellest them all.

The phrase "many daughters" is a tender term of affection. "Virtuously" (*chayil*) refers to one's strength -- the power of an army.

Not only do her husband and children praise her, the Spirit of God sheds light on her beauty and supremacy -- she excels above all the blond bombshells in the market place.

Her inspiration

30 Favour is deceitful, and beauty is vain: but a woman that feareth the LORD, she shall be praised.

"Favour" (*chen*) refers to "graces," assets, or "charm."

The key to this woman's success is that she works under the eye of the Lord; that is, she is a God-conscious woman and not a man-conscious social climber.

She works to please him when only He can see and judge. She is not a people-pleaser; rather, she walks in a "manner worthy of the Lord, fully pleasing to him: bearing fruit in every good work and increasing in the knowledge of God" (Colossians 1:10).

Men love charm and beauty. The world has hundreds of industries dedicated to enhancing the allure and glamour of women, but these coveted features are deceitful because they add nothing to the family and more often than not they disguise the ugly sins of anger and bitterness. But, the crown of glory on this lovely woman is the fear of the LORD -- a golden asset that honors the sovereignty, holiness, and majesty of the one, true God -- the expression of her faith.

Her reward

31 Give her of the fruit of her hands; and let her own works praise her in the gates.

"her own works praise her in the gates;" observant men count her works and name them one by one. The mere mentioning of them trumpets her worth . . . and no words can add to her orchestra of honor.

This lovely portrait of a godly woman is an ideal presentation designed to be a model for pious women. Don't be discouraged. Life involves time and growth. Grow in the fear of the Lord. Employ your hands; develop life skills; and cloth your tongue with kindness. Set your sights on pleasing the Lord and one day people will rise up to sing your praises.

Remember the Hope: Our Heavenly Father is the God of recovery Who sent His only Son to save His people from their sins - (Matthew 1:21).

Source: Stockton, Proverbs for Wisdom

<https://sedm.org/Forms/17-Theology/ProverbsforWisdom.pdf>

11.13. Marks of A Godly Woman

"The aged women likewise, that they be in behavior as becometh holiness, not false accusers, not given to much wine, teachers of good things; That they may teach the young women to be sober, to love their husbands, to love their children, To be discreet, chaste, keepers at home, good, obedient to their own husbands, that the word of God be not blasphemed." - Titus 2:3-5



Figure 2: dreamtime free stock photo

Paul is addressing older women (*presbutidas*) who are seasoned Christians. She is the opposite of the odious feminist in Proverbs 30. He challenged these sisters to develop a way of life consistent with temple servants: quiet, humble, heads covered (1 Corinthians 11).

The Greek word "becometh holiness" is an adjective describing the noun "behavior." It refers to deportment consistent with actions suitable to sacred duties. The root word (*ieros*) refers to that which belongs to divinity or that which is God-like; i.e., deportment consistent with the character of the Lord God--character revealed in the Ten Commandments; that is, this woman dresses modestly and speaks wisely.

Furthermore, there are some behaviors that are to be avoided like the Black plague: "not slanderers" and not "slaves to much wine."

The word "slanderer" is derived from the Greek word *diabolos* -- the name given to the Devil who is "the accuser of the brethren" and the "accuser of husbands" (Revelation 12:10).

Here Paul is referring to that discerning, critical, accusing spirit that comes through the experience of discerning people. Older women often have strong opinions and 20 / 20 perceptions when it comes to people. But, without a bridle on the tongue, an unrestrained woman can inject death into relationships. It has been said, "A six inch tongue can slay a six foot man." It is true. A sharp tongue can slice a man into a thousand pieces.

Positively, mature women in Christ are called to be "teachers of good" or "good teachers." Only God has a right to define "good." Good is defined in the Ten Commandments. Further, every command is good. Thus, these mature sisters are instructed to teach that which is consistent with the law of the LORD God. And, they teach women, NOT MEN!

Older women should teach younger women the skills and disciplines needed to have a successful home and marriage. Experienced wives and mothers will find

their greatest avenue of ministry in teaching younger wives what they need to know to be effective wives, mothers, and homemakers. ~ John MacArthur

This could be called "Marks of a Pious Woman" or "The Seven duties of a Christian Woman." The word "teach" or "train" is a subjunctive expressing a purpose; that is, it should be the purpose of older, mature Christian woman to train younger women in seven areas of duty.

First, it is a mark of Christian women "to love their husbands."

The word "love" here is not agape love, but *philandrous*; i.e., practical, caring, on-hands type love.

Generally speaking, secular women don't have a clue about how to love their man. They are good at demanding, complaining, and socializing, but they are not good at meeting the needs of their husbands. They are good at eating, sleeping, partying, and watching soap operas, but they not good at understanding their head and following his rules for the home.

Most men are quite simple in that their needs are few: they can be quite happy if they come home to (A) a good meal and an ordered home, (B) a loving affectionate wife, and (B) a woman that respects his authority and follows his rules for the home.

In marriages that are in trouble, you will find a bitter, complaining woman that has failed to provide these three things – the Bible calls her the "odious woman" (Proverbs 30:23). No man can long endure coming home to a wife who opens a can of beans, is as cool as a cucumber, and who drills him like a prosecuting attorney. A woman, who can't cook, is too tired for romantic love, and whose heart is filled with bitter complaints that will burn her house to the ground.

Therefore, pious Christian women are exhorted to teach younger woman how to cook a tasty meal, keep a clean, orderly house, how to care for her husband's need for intimacy, and to weigh her words so that they are always respectful and edifying. No barbs allowed! A cold, finger-wagging, neck jerking, motor mouth, in-your-face woman will find herself without a home applying for food stamps while looking to the government to take care of her.

Second, it is a mark of Christian women to "love their children."

When the word "love" is mentioned most women think of rule-bending indulgence or ooey- goeey, marshmallow permissiveness -- the kind of over protective love that can ruin children. Love must be defined. We dare not draw upon a pagan definition of love or the psychological model of love. Love is defined as obeying God's commandments:

1 John 5:2 By this we know that we love the children of God, when we

love God, and keep his commandments.

The home is the institution of education. It is the duty of Christian parents to train their children in the basic skills that they need to be successful in life. One of these disciplines is law. The devout home is a place where children learn the law of the LORD God, His judgments, and His commands. When a woman teaches her children to love the LORD God and to keep his commandments, she is well on her way to being a good mother. Unlike pagan women who are yellers and screamers and whose houses are built near Mount Vesuvius, Christian mothers live near the tree of life and bring their children up in the "nurture and admonition of the Lord."

Third, it is a mark of Christian women to be "discreet" (*sophronizo*).

The word "discreet" is a reference to self-control. Self-control is a rose in the bonnet of a good woman. It refers to the thermostat on her emotions and the filter on her mouth. It is the opposite of being anxious or worried or loquacious. Pagan women are easily governed by their thoughts and emotions. Husband and home are often neglected. Odious women are known for their explosive emotions and sharp tongues. When troubles arise, a carnal woman can become a chatty-Cathy or a worrywart or as critical as the Washington Post about a Republican politician. Feminists are not called "Bi....s" for nothing. Christian women trust God for all things and exercise control over their minds, emotions, and tongue. For a sharp, bitter tongue set on fire by hell will burn the house to the ground. Be humble or stumble.

Fourth, it is a mark of Christian women to be "chaste" and "pure" (*hagnos*).

Purity is the Lily of virtues. The word "pure" reminds us of snowflakes, of the pristine waters of a high mountain stream, of a clear blue sky with cotton like clouds, and a tall glass of crystal clear water. The word purity refers to moral goodness, modesty, and singularity of devotion to God and family. It is the opposite of sophisticated.(1) Purity is hard to find in a world where the air is foul and the streams are muddy. It seems the Poisonous Tree has contaminated every stream where feminists camp.

Christian wives are known for their pure thoughts, sound words, and good works. They are aware of women who sleep under the Poisonous Tree, dress like prostitutes and who have wasp-words on their lips. But they shun their grim ways. Pious women drink from the water of life; dress modestly and adorn themselves with clothes that complement their femininity; decorate their homes with symbols of life, and anoint their lips with the law of kindness.

Fifth, it is a mark of Christian women "to be keepers at home" (*oikouros*).

This is a contrast to the seductress whose feet are never at home and always on the street in Proverbs 7. Secular women like to socialize, flit around, and

mingle with the boys. The Christian woman, however, is focused on her home. Godly women are a cross between Virgin Mary and Betty Crocker. They are homemakers intensely devoted to their family and its prosperity. In a godly home you can hear the vacuum cleaner running, washing machines working, and children laughing while doing chores. There is no higher calling for a woman than that of being a wife and mother. To take a job in some high-rise LLC sweat shop is a demotion from champion race horse to stall donkey.

The Christian woman as a housewife, looking diligently to the affairs of her family, was the standard in Puritan New England:

In seventeenth century New England no respectable person questioned that a woman's place was in the home. By the laws of Massachusetts as by those of England a married woman could hold no property of her own. When she became a wife, she gave up everything to her husband and devoted herself exclusively to managing his household. Henceforth her duty was to "keep at home, educating her children, keeping and improving what is got by the industry of the man." (Edmund S. Morgan, *The Puritan Family* (New York, 1944), p. 42.)

One should not underestimate the impact of social engineers upon the Christian family. Lusting for a greater tax base, politicians saw homemakers as a "human resource" for government. In the 1960's, feminism was born. Rebel Gloria Steinem and others were financed by the Zionist Banksters to captain their cause. A pseudo war on women was announced wherein women were pushed out of the home and into the working world. The man's wages were reduced and soon it took two incomes to provide for the family. Even teenagers have to find part time jobs to support the family. Consequently, it has become increasingly difficult for Christian women to be "keepers at home." Even in the best homes, the woman has been forced into the workplace to help pay the family bills for periods of time. Necessity knows no law. While it is still possible for a woman to "be a keeper at home," the challenges are real. Husband and wife will have to seek the LORD God and carefully plan how they can work together to keep mom at home with the kids.

Sixth, it is a mark of Christian women to be "good" (*agathos*).

The meaning behind "good" is that of kind heartedness. Feminists are known for catty behavior and tongues as sharp as a butcher's knife. Pious women are known for their generous spirit and kind words. The "good" here must not be defined by man, but defined by God. Modern women define "good" as a woman working in an office on the top floor of some skyscraper in a big city. But, "good" is defined by God's law. It is good for a woman to be a keeper at home. It is good for a woman to honor her husband and to arranger herself under his law order. It is good for a woman to share the fruits of her labor with her neighbors and to be a "stay-at-home" mom putting band aides on scraped knees.

Seventh, it is the mark of Christian women to be "obedient to their own husbands."

Odious women obey their own passions. Furthermore, they see themselves in competition with men fighting to the bitter end for supremacy over men. Cultic religions drift toward matriarchal homes where the men are nothing but passive participants under the powerful thumb of dominating women. But, no so with Biblical women! Mature Christian woman understand that God appointed men to be the head of the home and that women are called to be "helpmeets" in furthering the purposes of God in the family; that is, pious women vigorously fight Eve's curse (Genesis 3:16; Proverbs 19:13; 1 Timothy 2:14).

The first mark of a Christian woman is to "love" (*philandros*) her husband; that is, to love him in practical, need-meeting ways. We get the word "philanthropy" from this Greek word which means to promote the welfare of another. True piety does not disregard one's duty to the family. In the context, it means that she is to understand her husband's needs and to find practical ways of ministering to him. It is often true, "Behind every successful man, you will find a successful woman."

In the seventh mark, Paul wanted to make sure that older Christian women return to the foundations of authority as set up by God in Genesis; that is, to train women "to obey" their husbands and avoid repeating Eve's transgression (Genesis 3:16 - the control over man).

The word for "obey" is *hupotasso*, a military term representing the subordination of soldiers to their commander. It is present passive participle and should be rendered as "be keepers of the home for good, while being obedient to their husbands."

As young women queen their home, they are to be mindful of their husband's supreme command and to order the home under the parameters set by their king. Moreover, she wears a headcovering in church as a sign that she acknowledges God's law-order; his roles for men and women; and, His headship (1 Corinthians 11). And, in some cultures pious women wear a scarf over their heads in public as a sign they are surrendered to propriety for women.

The grand reason that older women need to teach younger women the marks of Christian womanhood is so the "word of God be not blasphemed." The word "blasphemed" means "to speak against." Here is a quote from the "Evil Bible," an atheist network:

"The problem with their Christian approach lies not only in an oft- noted failure to practice what they preach, but an equally pronounced tendency to ignore what the Bible itself preaches."

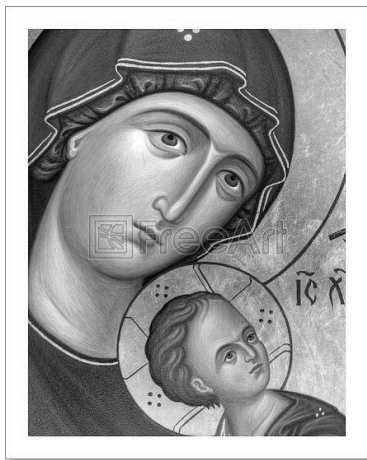
Paul complains that the Name of God was blasphemed among the Gentiles on account of the evil deeds of the Jews (Romans 2:24; see Ezekiel 36:20-23), and he did not want the error repeated in the church. That is, in obeying their husbands, Christian women have an opportunity to glorify God by their reverent conduct in the home. There are none so intolerant as those who preach tolerance. The eyes of secularists are upon Christians and they are more than ready to indict Christian women for practicing "hypocrisy to the highest degree."

The atheist rant continues:

"Christians practice what can only be described as "selective morality". What they like, they cling to and shove down the throats of others; what they don't like, they ignore vehemently."

In this case, the critics of Christianity have tossed a two-ringer horseshoe. Thus, Christian women, and men, must revisit the Third Commandment, and seek to be true men who do NOT take the name of the LORD God in vain.

In summary, Paul places a duty on mature Christian women to train younger women about God's law-order and roll for women in the home. This roll does not include running for governor, but it does include being pious and serving her husband and children.



fa11749170 FreeArt

11.14. Mary, the Model Woman

Where have all the sweet, innocent women disappeared to in this country? The secular, humanistic works of John Dewey and odious women like Betty Friedan, Gloria Steinem, and Hillary Clinton come to mind.

How beautiful are the words of Mary, "*Behold the handmaid (servant) of the Lord; be it unto me according to thy word*" (Luke 1:38).

Mary is truly magnificent: magnificent in purity, spiritual heritage, innocence, simplicity, submission,

peace and trust..

Consider her greatness: daughter of Abraham, Judah, descendent of

Figure 3: Courtesy of FreeArt.com

a Hebrew of Hebrews, an Israelite, descendent of Tamar, Rahab, Ruth, and

David - a true Israelite indeed; that is, she was a pure, virgin princess in the family of King David who was filled with the Spirit of God...

Many a Christian woman has been inspired by Mary and sought to imitate her pure devotion to the Lord . . . but that is rare today.

How many women in America graduate from the public school system that identify themselves as the "handmaid" of the Lord? Or say, "I want to be like Mary when I grow up"?

Name one woman you know that considers herself a servant of the Lord peacefully submitted to the unexpected reversals of Providence -- an unexpected pregnancy, a financial reversal, poverty, hardship, and rejection by the Head of State (Herod)?.

For that matter, how many pure, masculine men do you know who have unconditionally subjected themselves to be a "servant of the Lord"?

If Mary is not our model of a servant, who is?

Oh, that all of us would be able to say with Mary, "I am Thy servant," "be it unto me according to thy word."

Abigail "bowed down with her face to the ground and said, 'I am your servant and am ready to serve you and wash the feet of my lord's servants.'" - 1 Samuel 25:41

11.15. The Deadly Sin of Fornication

"Flee fornication. Every sin that a man doeth is without the body; but he that committeth fornication sinneth against his own body. " - 1 Corinthians 6:18

Catholics distinguish between mortal (grave) sins and venial (pardonable) sins.

In Catholic *sophia*, a "mortal" sin is an act that seriously threatens one's relationship to God; whereas, a venial sin is something that is so commonly human it is more easily forgivable.

If there is an argument for distinguishing between mortal sins and venial sins, this passage supports the Catholic argument.

In 1 Corinthians 6:18, the apostle distinguishes between the deadly sin of fornication and other sins common to man: *"Flee fornication. Every sin that a man doeth is without the body; but he that committeth fornication sinneth against his own body" (6:18).*

Ellicott references the seriousness and solemnness of the sin of fornication in the litany, "From fornication, and all other deadly sin, good Lord, deliver us."

Let's take a serious look at this passage and see if we can understand the Apostle's argument on the deadly sin of fornication.

12 All things are lawful unto me, but all things are not expedient: all things are lawful for me, but I will not be brought under the power of any.

We are free men that are not bound by the conscience of other men.

God's law is absolute. Where He has spoken, we are obligated to obey. Where there is no law, we are generally free to do what duty demands. But, just because we are free to do a thing does not mean it is prudent or expedient to do so. Freedom has a harness. Paul chose not to engage in certain lawful activities because it might hinder his service to Christ. "Others may, I cannot."

There is all the difference in the world between eating things sacrificed to idols (1 Corinthians 8:4) (a matter of expediency), and the committing fornication (a deadly sin).

13 Meats for the belly, and the belly for meats: but God shall destroy both it and them. Now the body is not for fornication, but for the Lord; and the Lord for the body.

Paul is setting up a contrast between matters of expediency like eating certain foods, and absolute prohibitions like fornication.

One's choice of foods is permissible, fornication is not. The former is consensual; the latter is not. Real law is an expression of the will of a supreme Sovereign. It does not involve one's consent. Law is duty!

Obligations arise out of contracts (consensual parties) or out of operation of law; i.e., mandatory obligations to a Sovereign designed to prevent injury to a person or to property.

Fornication is not a choice, it is sin! It injures both participants.

The word "fornication" comes from the word "*porneia*," illicit sexual acts other than marriage. The word "pornography" comes from "*porneia*" which refers to the "writings of pimps and whores."

Lawful matters are to be decided upon the highest principles of pragmatism and expediency; but fornication is an unlawful act, and therefore the question of its pragmatism and expediency does not surface in this pilgrim journey on earth.

Paul explains the purpose of the body by negating any thought that the body is for sexual pleasure with consenting adults.

The body is not like can of coke where you consume the beverage and throw the can away.

The purpose of the body is to house the Spirit of God . . . to be His temple . . . to be His "home base" from which He accomplishes His holy purpose on earth.

14 And God hath both raised up the Lord, and will also raise up us by his own power.

The plural pronoun "us" encompasses spirit, soul, and body. God saves the whole man and not just his soul.

In verse 19, the body is identified as "the temple of the Holy Spirit." Since this is so, we dare not scribble *porneia-graffitii* on the holy temple using stalk-leaves from the Poisonous Tree.

God made the stomach for food and food for the stomach. Both will be destroyed by death.

But, God's intends is to save the whole man including his outer and inner man. For the "body" is equivalent to the "us" in this passage.

15 Know ye not that your bodies are the members of Christ? shall I then take the members of Christ, and make them the members of an harlot? God forbid.

"Know ye not" contains a slight rebuke considering there were Corinthians who were ignorant of the fact there bodies are joined to Christ.

Though there is no choice when it comes to using the body to commit fornication, Paul confronts the insane reasoning that it is possible to take the member-body away from Christ and make it a member-body of a prostitute through an act of fornication.

The double act of "taking the body away" from Christ, and joining God's temple with a harlot is not plausible.

The exclamation-prohibition, "God forbid!" (*me genoito*) is in the Optative Mood meaning, "it is impossible!!"

There is no way under heaven a man or woman can commit fornication and be a true Christian in fact. God forbid!

What a rebuke to the lax, indulgent, permissive so-called Christians!

16 What? know ye not that he which is joined to an harlot is one body? for two, saith he, shall be one flesh.

We have here another reason to flee fornication. There is no such thing as casual sex. A sex act binds and unites. "Do not know" is an assertion that Paul's statement is true, correct, certain, and not misleading.

Conjugation means "oneness" with a whore! A reprehensible thought for the God-seeker. There is NO SUCH THING as a "Christian" fornicator any more than there is such a thing as a "Christian" prostitute (6:9).

17 But he that is joined unto the Lord is one spirit.

By being "joined unto the Lord" in one spirit does NOT MEAN we are married to Christ as some nuns propose.

The union here is a spiritual one. Our union with Christ is intimate but mystical. We are united in faith, in ambition, and in purpose but not "married" to Him. Paul intensifies the argument against any degradation of the body by an act of fornication.

18 Flee fornication. Every sin that a man doeth is without the body; but he that committeth fornication sinneth against his own body.

There are few things more heretical than the fallacy that Christians are at liberty to choose their own law order.

Is there anything more clear than this solemn command: "flee fornication?"

Immediate flight is the ONLY remedy for avoiding this deadly sin (See Joseph in Genesis 39).

What an egregious sin fornication must be!

"without the body" means some sins profane the outer court of the temple without touching the holy place within the heart. Fornication defiles the inner sanctuary; that is, fornication injures the core of one's soul . . . his naos . . . his holy of holies . . . the very covenant on which his relationship to God is supposed to be founded.

"sinneth against his own body": The "body" in this passage is enlarged to include the whole man: spirit, soul, and body. Paul claims the body is the Temple of the Holy Spirit with a "naos" (inner sacred altar) that includes a meeting place where God meets with man! When one commits fornication, he commits a deadly sin that injures the whole man.

Other sins may only profane the outer courts of the temple; the sin of fornication defiles the very holy of holies within God's body-temple.

Thus, fornication is different from common sins in that it damages the whole man, poisons faith, and sullies the conscience.

Ellicott observed, fornication "hardens a' within, and petrifies the feelings."

It is the man that sins, not the flesh; fornication corrupts the whole man, not just the human body.

Matthew 15:15-20 But Peter said to him, "Explain the parable to us." 16 And he said, "Are you also still without understanding? 17 Do you not see that whatever goes into the mouth passes into the stomach and is expelled. 18 But what comes out of the mouth proceeds from the heart, and this defiles a person. 19 For out of the heart come evil thoughts, murder, adultery, sexual immorality, theft, false witness, slander. 20 These are what defile a person. But to eat with unwashed hands does not defile anyone."

Fornication is a mortal, deadly sin. No one can commit this sin without thunder erupting from Mount Sinai because of his trespass against the King's law-order.

Thus, we have the solemn order, "Flee fornication." This is not an option . . . or choice. It is command.

19 What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?

"Do you not know" is a rebuke of ignorance.

Our bodies do not belong to government, governors, legislators, or to the whims of social engineers.

We are owned by Another; that is, Christ has all rights over our bodies.

While in a political sense, we are sovereigns over our body; in a spiritual and legal sense, our bodies are not our own, they belong to our Lord and Savior.

That is, we act as his stewards over our own bodies. We care for our bodies as ones who must give account on how one pilots his own vessel.

Paul gives two reasons we do not have absolute rights over our own bodies: (1) our bodies are inhabited by the Holy Spirit; and (2) we have been bought and purchased by the blood of Christ.

20 For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's.

Christians have been bought and are therefore owned by Another. Paul emphasizes you are not your own; i.e., you do not have absolute rights over your body. Your body is governed by God's rules.

The price of this purchase is the precious "blood of Christ," the currency of the spirit world (1 Peter 1:18-20).

Because we are not our own, we have a duty to glorify God in our whole being all the time.

Fornication, tattooing our body, and masking our face shames the Savior.

What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?

Application: During 2020 and 2021, Governors ordered residents of the State to wear masks. Many Christians thinking they are government property complied.

What are Christians supposed to do? Are they to cover the temple of God? What does the Bible say?

Answer: Expedience may require one to wear a mask if he is in a dust storm or works in a factory with flying fragments of steel.

Christianity is the only religion in the world that doesn't use masks in a worship service. Christians are prohibited from doing so because men are made in the image of God. Not only is there no command to wear a mask, in many cases masks are strictly forbidden. Lepers covered their faces. Condemned criminals like Haman (Esther) were forced by the government to wear a hood-mask.

Christian men are commanded to not wear masks or head gear in a worship service. Christian women, however, are ordered to wear a veil in church; and, OT women often wore a veil over their face in public as a symbol of modesty (SS 5:7). Christian women wear veils over their head as a symbol that the congregations is to respect God's law-order (1 Corinthians 11:1-16).

Application 2: What about so called "vaccines" which are not vaccines? What does the Bible say? Didn't God create man in his own image? By what authority does a Christian have to accept the offer to inject dangerous, experimental, mRNA, DNA altering drugs into your body? Isn't this a form of suicide?

Answer:

My son, if sinners entice thee, consent thou not" (Proverbs 1:10).

"For ye are bought with a price: therefore glorify God in your body, and in your spirit, which are God's" (1 Corinthians 6:20).

11.16. There is Power in the Blood

7 But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light,

This wonderful text has three important clauses.

The contingency word "if" introduces a 3rd class conditional clause with the subjunctive" -- maybe you do, but maybe you don't, but if you do, you will walk in the light.

we have fellowship one with another,

John did not say, "if we walk in the light as He is in the light, we have fellowship with God;" but, "fellowship one with another."

Walking with God's people is primary evidence one is walking in the light. Instead of calling the pretenders "liars," John flips the coin on its edge to expose the false claims; that is, those claiming to walk with God must also walk happily with the flawed, fractured people of God. God's heart is with His people, and if professing Christians do not love God's people, they don't know God. If one claiming to know the Shepherd does not hang around the sheep, he is probably a wolf in sheep's clothing.

and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanseth us from all sin.

The verb "cleanseth" (*katarizo*) introduces the subject of sanctification, and not justification.

We get the word "catharsis" from this Greek stem. "Catharsis" is "a metaphor used by Aristotle in the Poetics to describe the effects of true tragedy on the spectator. The use is derived from the medical term *katharsis* (Greek: "purgation" or "purification"). Aristotle states that the purpose of tragedy is to arouse "terror and pity" and thereby effect the catharsis of these emotions" (Britannica).

The spirit uses the term "catharsis" to define the healing of lepers in Matthew 11:5.

The concern in 1 John is not being saved from the penalty of sin, but the power of sin and its haunting influence on the conscience. He is not discussing being "redeemed" by blood, but being "cleansed" and "healed" by blood. Even the best of saints sin and "feel" the ring, pop, and thump of guilt pounding away like kettledrums in the conscience. This text ministers to the conscience informing believing men that conscientiousness of the blood cleanses and qualifies them for moment by moment fellowship with the Father and the Son.

Faith in the blood, therefore, silences the percussions of a troubled conscience (Hebrews 10:17).

Rest, soul, rest in the sufficiency and efficiency of the blood of Christ which is working now, this moment, to cleanse your conscience.

Believing men are propitiated through His blood - Romans 3:25

Believing men are justified by His blood - Romans 5:9

Believing men are redeemed by His blood - Ephesians 1:7, Colossians 1:14, Hebrews 9:12, 1 Peter 1:18-19, Revelation 5:9

Believing men are made near to God and His promises by His blood - Ephesians 2:13

Believing men secure peace with God through His blood - Colossians 1:20

Believing men obtain a clean conscience through His blood - Hebrews 9:12-14

Believing men attain boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus - Hebrews 10:19

Believing men are sanctified by His blood - Hebrews 13:12, 1 Peter 1:2

Believing men are repaired and equipped to serve God by His blood - Hebrews 13:20-21

Believing men are cleansed by His blood - 1 John 1:7

Believing men are washed from their sins by the Blood of Christ - Revelation 1:5

Believing men are made white in the blood of the Lamb - Revelation 7:14

Believing men gain victory over Satan, the accuser of the brethren, by His blood - Revelation 12:11

In 1 John 1:7, the apostle is not occupied with the cross, but with the throne; not with the blood that purchases sinners, but the life-giving blood of Christ which purifies and sanctifies the saint. Blood in this text has "the cleansing power of life" similar to Paul's statement in Romans 8:2 'the law of the spirit of life in Jesus Christ makes me free from the law of sin and death.'

We are not only saved by his death from the penalty of sin, we are saved by his life from the power of sin (Romans 5:10).

When Zachariah gained insight into the Christ child he saw the hope that "we being delivered out of the hand of our enemies might serve him without fear" (Luke 1:74). How can we serve Him without fear? The answer is in 1 John 1:7 and Hebrews 13:20-21).

In Hebrews we read, "through the blood of the everlasting covenant, make you perfect (*katartizo*) in every good work to do his will, working in you that which is well pleasing in his sight" (13:20-21). The word "perfect" (*katartizo - tisai*) (aorist optative - a wish) means "to equip thoroughly" and "to repair." It is translated "perfectly joined together" in 1 Corinthians 1:10; "fully furnished" or "equipped" in 2 Timothy 3:17; "to mend" nets in Matthew 4:21; "to restore" in Galatians 6:1; and "to frame" in Hebrews 11:3. In using the optative the apostle is expressing a wish that a believer's consideration of the blood will fully equip him to serve God.

Christ not only saves us through the power of His death unto justification; He saves us through the Power of His Risen Life unto sanctification. The One saving us through His death from the penalty of sin is the One now saving us through His life from the power of sin. He saves men from the condemnation of sin through faith in His death, and saves men from the domination of sin through faith in His Highly Exalted Life (Colossians 3:2).

A growing cleansing from the dominion and the power of sin is granted to us, if the life of Jesus Christ is breathing in our lives as we depend on His heart-beat operating within us by His Spirit.

The sacrifice on the Cross is the basis of everything, but that sacrifice does not exhaust what Christ does for us. He died for our sins, and lives for our sanctifying. He died for us, He lives in us. Because He died, we are forgiven; because He lives, we are made pure (MacClaren).

That only way we can become free from the tyranny that dominates us, is having the life of Christ as the animating principle of our lives. When we depend on His life as the animating principle of our lives, the spirit of Jesus emancipates us from the power of sin and death (MacClaren).

The blood of Christ at the cross redeems us from the penalty of sin unto justification (being declared righteous), but the quickening blood of Christ in His intercessory work at the right hand of God cleanses us from the power of sin unto sanctification (being made righteous).

The verb "cleanseth" is a present active indicative meaning His blood cleanses and keeps on purifying the saint. Believing men are not only redeemed by His blood, but cleansed day by day, moment by moment by His blood in order that men might be sanctified and qualified to walk in the light. Like silver is refined by heat, the heart is refined by continual reliance on the life of Christ as the animating power of one's life.

If the blood of Jesus Christ cleanseth from ALL sin, what does that leave for baptism . . . or prayer . . . or penance . . . or saying the Rosary to cleanse?

11.17. Remedy by Confession

1 John 1:9

Truth be known, many Christians are tied up in knots over their failures -- failures that prevent them from enjoying the Lord and His accomplishments for them at the cross and the throne.

1 John 1:9 is the remedy for the misery of those suffering from the megaphone of guilt.

9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

The word "confess" (*homologeō*) means to agree with -- part of the 3rd class conditional clause involving a subjunctive: "If we confess our sins," and few do, but if we do . . .

The word "just" in this context means "faithful to His promises;" that is, God is a promise-keeper.

"Walking in the light" involves naming and confessing one's sins as the Spirit identifies them to him. Formal admission of sins to God is evidence the believer is walking in the light with God. Silence, denial, and concealment belong to the darkness.

Confession by itself does not sanitize the soul. Cleansing is ONLY accomplished by His sacrifice at the cross. There is no cleansing from sin apart from our Lord. All the prayer in the world cannot cleanse the soul unless one has appropriated the cleansing power of His blood -- the currency of the spirit-world.

But, cleansing from defilement for the Christian is achieved by confession. Christ need not die again! Confession brings the stained believer in contact with the cleansing power of the blood.

Light cleanses because the Truth reaches the man. As light dispels darkness, confession exposes sin so that the light of Christ's accomplishments can heal the man. Mothers used to say, "Play in the sunshine" because of the therapeutic nature of sunlight. As sunlight disinfects and heals wounds, walking in the light with an honest and open heart heals the sinner; that is confession enables

the man to come into the sunlight where the blood of Christ can be applied to the soul (1:7).

Know that confession by itself does not cleanse the soul. There is no forgiveness apart from the doing and dying of Christ. Confession is the catalyst that enables the blood to be applied to our sins so we can maintain our walk with the Father and the Son moment by moment.

Know that confession to a priest does not cleanse the soul. The "blood of Christ cleanses us from all sin." Confession of sins to God (and forsaking them) enables the Spirit to apply the cleansing power of the blood to the conscience (Proverbs 28:13).

God is faithful to purify the believer because of the doing and dying of Christ. Confession connects the Christian with the cure (blood) to effectively maintain the man in his walk "with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ." Because Christ is the believer's Representative at the throne of God, he can afford to admit guilt before God. Walking in the light means the man can be humble and acknowledge the worst about himself knowing that he will not be rejected. The one honestly confessing known sins in their full extent has the full assurance of free and full forgiveness necessary to walk in the light "with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ."

Those walking in the light are given a promise. Confession, as opposed to suppression, enables the believer to claim God's forgiveness and enjoy the cleansing of the conscience from ALL unrighteousness. This confidence is not based on one's "victory" over sin or the strength of one's resistance to sin, but upon God's character: i.e. when we come into the light and confess our sins, He is faithful and just to forgive and cleanse us because His Son shed his blood as a payment for our sins. Being so cleansed equips us to pray and serve Him.

1 John 2:20 For if our heart condemn us, God is greater than our heart, and knoweth all things.

Luke 1:74- 75 That he would grant unto us, that we being delivered out of the hand of our enemies might serve him without fear, in holiness and righteousness BEFORE him, all the days of our life.

1 John 4:18 There is no fear in love; but perfect love casteth out fear: because fear hath torment. He that feareth is not made perfect in love.

Confession of sin is more like a "foot washing" than a total bath (See John 13) -- a necessary process to wash away the defilement that comes from rubbing shoulders with other sinners on this earth.

Confession must be accompanied by faith. Faith has to be aggressive after the conscience has knowledge of failure. For this reason the psalmist (Psalm 32) exhorts confessors to triple down on laying hold of the benefits of confession

by denying one's feelings and believing the promises until one's feelings match the truth of God's promises. Joy over forgiveness is evidence of faith. These acts of obedience make the heart glad. Believe it, then achieve it.

King David, in his great confession said,

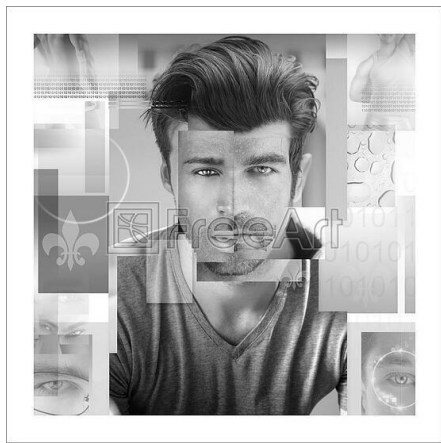
Psalm 32:11 Be glad in the LORD, and rejoice, ye righteous: and shout for joy, all ye that are upright in heart.

11.18. Where Have All the Men Gone?

Man to Man

"Who find a faithful man?" -Proverbs 20:6

"Be strong," - Joshua 1:8



fa15959160 FreeArt

Figure 4: Courtesy of FreeArt

Recently a Christian man reported to me that his wife applied for a divorce.

I wasn't surprised.

She complained about not having enough money, about how he made her pregnant after they were married, how the pregnancies ruined her delicate little female figure size six, how he didn't provide her with a bigger house, how he worked too many hours and didn't have time to take her out to eat, to clean the house, and to do dishes and, and, and . . .

Instead of rebuking her for all her whining and complaining, or kicking her out of the house, he retreated to a strategy of appeasement. He let her take control of the home, make the financial decisions, and set the rules for the home. Now she wants out . . . and she wants the house, the car, and all his income. In trying to appease her, he lost her. In submitting to her, he lost his manly leadership.

It's tough to have a gold digging feminist as a wife!!

Another man who I will call "John" earned hundred thousand dollars a year to provide for his family of five. When his wife began to complain about not having enough money for new clothes, money for a brand new car, and money for nights out on the town, John told her she could leave any time she wanted. She did! In the process, she

began to carouse around with other men. As soon as he found out about her adultery, He divorced her under the common law. Penniless, she was forced to find work and barely earns \$25,000 a year.

He still works hard trying to provide for his children and be the best father he can be to them. She betrayed her husband, forsook her children, and she continues to shack up with men. In my opinion, he took the high road and made the right decision.

Where have all the real men gone? For that matter, where is the godly woman who is “candy to the eye and honey to the soul?”

We live in a new world order that is toxic for males.

Female Preachers in the Church

<https://nikeinsights.famguardian.org/forums/topic/female-preachers-in-the-church/>

“Trump laments #MeToo as ‘very dangerous’ for powerful men” (Washington Post, September 26, 2018)

“Trump says it’s ‘a very scary time for young men in America,’” (Jeremy Diamond, October 2, 2018)

Trump is right! Powerful forces are at work to murder masculinity and to feminize the world.

Once women are in leadership roles, the NWO elite easily manipulate the “weaker” sex to leadership positions. (See UN 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development. Count the number of times the document refers to women or girls.)

But, the problem is not just feminist women. Unrighteous males are in flight from responsibility.

David French at National Review laments a new statistic that shows today’s young men are, physically, the weakest generation in recorded history (CNS News). Male sperm count is way down (<https://health.howstuffworks.com/pregnancy-and-parenting/pregnancy/fertility/men-s-sperm-count-down-significantly-study-finds.htm>)

The Biblical principle for men is to be strong — stronger than the modern assertive liberated women . . . stronger than the UN Agenda to destroy men and to feminize the world.

GOD said to the patriarch Job, “Prepare yourself like a man.” Paul ordered the Corinthians in 1 Corinthians 16:13 (ESV) “...act like men...” Job 38:2 and Job 40:7

God’s man must provide loving leadership for the family, and if he fails . . . and he will, he must never yield his leadership role to a demanding, pouting, feminist wife.

He can admit wrong, repent, and learn to lead better, but under no circumstances should he ever resign his leadership role to lead, to provide, and to protect his family. Never . . . even if his wife complains and pouts about his leadership . . . and she will.

In contrast to the Biblically-trained woman who learns to give thanks in all things (1 Thessalonians 5:18), the public school system and Hollyweird trains women to be pouters and complainers.

Why are men so wimpy and afraid to take charge of their homes . . . of their wives . . . of their children?

Why are modern men so spineless, continually behaving like cutesy pajama boys?

Why are more and more men becoming cross dressers? Hasn't God given men authority to lead their families with wisdom and compassion (Ephesians 5:24ff)?

The answer may lie in the feminist movement and the radical indoctrination that men are creeps, that women are wise; that men are bad, that women are good; that men are liars, and that women are truth tellers who would never lie or deceive anyone; that all males are cavemen that mistreat women, and that its time for women to take control of their lives, their families, and the nation. "We can do it!"

Real men don't eat knish nor can they spell it correctly (quiche). But, they do wear flannel shirts, play fetch with their dog, fix cars, enjoy leather jackets, clean their Glock, commit to manly prayer, chew on the nails of God's Word, buy BB guns for their sons, enjoy aggressive cuddling with their wife, use duct tape to repair everything, fight bear knuckled, eat steak medium rare. They say "No" at least twice a day, build stuff just to build stuff, hang out in man caves with other bearded guys telling wife jokes, drink coffee black, and never, never under any circumstance ask for directions! Moreover, you will never see his old beat up Chevy truck parked at a psychologist's office.

It's time for men to decide if they are going to be God's man and chop wood or stay home and push baby buggies.

Man up and help the wife do dishes, or lie around the house like a couch potato watching Alvin the Chipmunk and the Simpsons.

Remember the Red Green code, "I am a man. I can change, if I have to," maybe.

In a post-Christian society, it is not possible or desirable for real men not to offend the modern, pant suit, public-school trained feminists. If feminists don't hate you, you are not acting like a man.

The rule of his home is "I am the king," "you are the Queen." Be happy and thankful or leave.

It is better to stand on your (godly) principles and lose a complaining, controlling wife, than give into a whining woman and lose your principles.

Proverbs 25:24 It is better to dwell in the corner of the housetop (alone), than with a brawling (complaining, entitled) feminist in a wide house.

1 Corinthians 16:13 Watch ye, stand fast in the faith, quit you like men, be strong.

Do not hear what is not being said. We are not saying a man should never listen to his wife! There is a time for a good man to consider his wife's legitimate struggles and do all he can to help his adorable queen (1 Peter 3:8).

Until then, be strong! Very strong!

11.19. The Law Against Crossdressing

James 4:12 There is one lawgiver, who is able to save and to destroy (put to death):

Ecclesiastes 12:14. 14 For God will bring every deed into judgment, including every hidden thing, whether it is good or evil.

Deuteronomy 22:5 The woman shall not wear that which pertaineth unto a man, neither shall a man put on a woman's garment: for all that do so are abomination unto the LORD thy God.

The word for "man" in this text is giber or "mighty man," -- a soldier or manly, masculine man.

The word "woman" is a translation of the Hebrew term *isha* which refers to a female.

The word "abomination" (*tow'ebah*) refers to something disgusting in a religious and moral sense.

What is disgusting is not the attire of the transvestite, but the person; i.e. the cross-dresser-drag queen is singled out as an "abomination."

That no penalty is attached to the crime informs us the punishment was left to the discretion of judges.

The purpose of the law does not appear to prevent debauchery, but to maintain a clear, "red line" distinction between the sexes.

There is no such thing as a transgender. Biologically, you are either male with an XY chromosomes or a female with XX chromosomes. Gender surgery does not change a person into the opposite sex, it only mutilates the body.

Ellicott reasons it is to protect the natural order of creation: "Doth not nature itself teach you?" (1 Corinthians 11:14).

Benson states the purpose "that men might not confound those sexes which God hath distinguished . . ."

Barnes adds, "The distinction between the sexes is natural and divinely established, and cannot be neglected without indecorum and consequent danger to purity."

That the purpose of this law was to prevent the heathen practice of wearing masks and religious costumes is rejected.

Positively, conservative Bible teachers conclude the purpose of this law was to sustain God's law-order by maintaining a strong, healthy distinction between the sexes -- a distinction through clothing and attire.

Negatively, the purpose of this law was to prevent the (1) the neutralization of the sexes; (2) the amalgamation of the sexes; (3) confusion regarding the roles of the sexes; (4) and, the creation of bland, emasculated, girly-boy males and the introduction of the alpha female into society.

The strength of both sexes is best maintained by obedience to God's law-order. The strength of man is submission to Christ, and the strength of a woman is submission to her husband (Ephesians 5:25). Both "hat removal" by men and the wearing of a "headcovering" by women are signs that men and women recognize God's law-order in the church; the neglect of which produces more than a little evil. See the three symbols God commands Christians to observe in 1 Corinthians 11.

The original sin of *libido dominandi* entered creation through the woman, and God's law is designed to prevent the domination of women over men and the flight from responsibility by males (Genesis 3).

In the past, there was a division of labor between husband and wife. There was man's work and woman's work. No man would be caught pushing a baby buggy in public, and no woman would "wear the pants" in the family. This was especially true in the military which promoted the masculinity of the army and marines.

Thus, the purpose of this law is to increase the strength and dignity of men and women in their respective roles.

But this law is under attack. Because Satan is the author of confusion, we see the following movements destabilize society, crush the family, and nullify the church.

The failure of adults to enact laws to prevent cross dressings has led to the following negative movements: Women's suffrage, unisex parlors, feminism, women's pant suits, the rise of so called "women pastors," trannies in women's sports, women out of the home effectively competing with men in the work place, neutralization of the masculine man and the assault on testosterone, promotion of pajama boys, the LGBTQ Movement, elimination of playgrounds in schools, labeling normal hyperactive boys as having ADHD, prescribing Adderall and other drugs for normal young boys, advocacy for gender choice, co-ed bathrooms and showers, gender sensitivity training, drag queens reading stories to children in public schools, drugs that disrupt production of testosterone, the feminization of the armed forces, lowering standards for police and firemen to facilitate a pro-female agenda work force, and the killing of male and female babies.

Because the problem is spiritual, there is no social or political answer to the multiplication of perversion in society. The crushing of masculinity and the apotheosis of women to positions of power provides evidence of man's war against God. The ONLY answer to the woke transvestite disease destroying families is genuine repentance and a return to God's law-order.

Zechariah 1:3 - Therefore say to them, 'Thus says the Lord of hosts, "Return to Me," declares the Lord of hosts, "that I may return to you," says the Lord of hosts.

11.20. A Man at the Helm

- "He shall rule over thee."- Genesis 3:16

The key to the home is to have a godly, manly-man at the helm in the home

All successful Christian homes have a man sitting at the head of the table.

All successful churches have a man's man in the pulpit.

All successful nations have a man of principle as commander and chief.



Figure 5: Courtesy of freepik

Christianity is as superior to other religions as a diamond ring is superior to a Cracker Jack plastic toy.

At the head of every successful Christian home you will find a man's man; and, in every dysfunctional home you will find a woman in charge.

No civilization in history was ever built or maintained by women; but, at the nadir of national calamity you will find women usurping power.

"My people—infants are their oppressors, and women rule over them. O my people, your guides mislead you and they have swallowed up the course of your paths" (Isaiah 3:12).

The Oak of Manliness

Every home needs an oak. Men are the strength and fiber of the home.

Every home needs a rose: and, women are what make the home beautiful. But, as beautiful as flowers may be, they are not what make a home strong and secure.

When women rule the home, you will find the fruits of the Poisonous Tree; when a godly men rule the home, you will find principle, strength, conviction, direction, responsibility, and joy.

Manliness was castrated by pale, socialistic, liberal Zionist theology--a theology of liberalism that denied the authority of the Bible and gave rise to radical feminism, sexual liberation, and autonomous women.

Manliness has been lost by the usurpation of feminism. The cacophony of estrogen blaring through our TV sets by high pitched female journalists and humanistic anchors guided by their own belly-button have drowned out masculinity.

In Sweden, testosterone has all but disappeared. Feminists even proposed a law that all men had to sit down to pee in public restrooms. Feminists rule the nation--a nation governed by idealist women and sweet men who have invited incongruous Muslims into the country--a country now on the verge of collapse. On the verge of collapse because one million masculine Muslim men pillage, rape, and won't assimilate. Sweden is getting what it deserves.

Feminists are not seeking equality but special privileges, franchises with government, and exemption from responsibility. Wedded to government, they have demanded and obtained the power to kill baby boys in the name of women rights. Shame on them! Hell is their destiny.

Mothers, wives, grandmothers, and daughters make life worth living and are the reason men go to war. But, they are not called to lead men!

Manly men are self-controlled. They are known for the gentleness as well as their superior, massive, muscular strength.

Manly men pray at the dinner table. They do not generally let their wife or children act as surrogates because prayer is a man's business (1 Timothy 2:8).

Manly men teach their family the law of the LORD God and insist that each member obeys it (Deuteronomy 6:4-6)!

Manly men listen and consult their wives, but accept responsibility for the decisions they make (1 Peter 3:7).

Manly men set rules for their homes, lead their wives, and instruct their children (Ephesians 6:1-4).

Manly men are armed with Glocks and AK-47s ready to protect their families (Psalm 149:6).

Where you find an iron man leading the home, you will find a powerful, virtuous wife wearing the strength of womanhood like a string of pearls around her slender neck. She may not be known in Washington D.C., but she is known by God and cherished by Him.

We are raising a nation of spineless, jello-backed clean shaven sissies because estrogen leads the household. The experiment of single-parent families led by women is the tragedy of feminism. In parts of England, 75 percent of the children are raised by single mothers. Single family housing units are called "man deserts." Feminism has destroyed Western Civilization . . . and, it is beyond repair.

No, the problem is not just dead-beat dads, but dead-beat mothers who bought into the lie that marriage is a democracy and that they "can bring home the bacon; fry it in the pan; and don't need a man."

The modern, irascible woman, a.k.a. a "b**ch," has been taught to believe that yelling at, screaming at, arguing with, bad mouthing, criticizing, belittling, tongue lashing, defying, and commanding men is a woman's right. Nonsense!

Proverbs 18:6 A fool's lips (feminists) enter into contention, and her mouth calleth for strokes.

Proverbs 31:26 A virtuous woman openeth her mouth with wisdom; and in her tongue is the law of kindness.

Yes, there is a problem with dead-beat dads . . . but, consider the fact that the cult of feminism is in rebellion against God's law-order and has declared war on testosterone to pound, pummel, defeat, clobber, control, whip, punish, beat, batter, and frustrate manhood.

America has declared war on manly men who seek to provide for their families so their wives can home school their children.

Likewise, the apostate church has bought into feminism where female pastors are its own tragedy.

God calls men to lead the family, the church, and the nation. The Bible speaks of the "men of Israel" but never the "women of Israel." Women are not permitted by God to lead a family, a church, or to pick up the sword of civil service: "He shall rule over thee." What God commands in the lesser (in the home), he demands in the greater (the nation).

Women who call for "equality" and the right to lead men are in rebellion against God's law order. Rebuke them! Men who let women lead are spiritually sick and in rebellion against God's law order. Rebuke them double!

No Biblical man will ever vote for a woman for president because she has rejected God's law order, will feminize public policy, and send the wrong message to women . . . and to foolish men.

The fact that feminist Hillary Clinton the enabler of her adulterating husband is proof positive that America has been irrecoverably infected by the hemlock of feminism and is near its end.

The problem with the modern, feministic church today is that they are talking about "love" as if it was the solve all for every social disease. Furthermore, love is seen as some kind of zappy feeling, ooey-goey compassion, syrupy tolerance, and irresponsible permissiveness. Nonsense!

Righteousness applied purges out evil. What is needed in today's church is men with power-building testosterone who hate mango-peach, honey-coated, sugar slap cereals for breakfast, and eat Iron-man Wheaties to start their day.

The problem with the nation is that we have women in Congress, the Supreme Court, and women running for the office of the presidency that have no business in civil service. Women in office is not progression, but regression.

Every woman in government is anti-god, anti-Christ, anti-Bible, and anti-man.

Furthermore, we no longer have real Christian men in public office. Public offices are being overrun with mediocre, clean-shaven, girly men, radical feminists, homosexuals, transvestites, and lesbians. No wonder our nation is in such a mess!!

Part II



Figure 6: Courtesy of freepik

Consider the strength, wisdom, and character of the Biblical model:

Genesis 2 - God created Adam first because a successful home must first have a strong intelligent male leading the family.

Genesis 2 – God made Adam the legal head of the family, and Eve was man’s helpmeet.

Genesis 3 – God’s plan for the family was derailed and plunged into chaos when Eve grabbed the helm of the ship and Adam capitulated to her lead. And, the whole human race fell.

Genesis 3 – God rectified the role reversal by increasing the pain of childbirth, and by creating a law that man shall rule over the woman: “He shall rule over thee.” In this way, man was forced to lead, and the woman forced to accept a subordinate role.

Women are at their best when they serve their husbands and family.

What God condemned in the lesser, He condemns in the greater. Women are not permitted to lead in the home, the church, or the nation.

Men are all together at their best when to provide the service of leadership to their family, church, and nation.

Genesis 4 – It was in the line of Seth and the leadership of Enoch when men began to call upon the name of Lord and to develop God-centered families.

Genesis 6 – It was Noah, not his wife, that built an ark to protect his family and the animal species from the deluge.

Genesis 9 – God handed Noah and his sons the sword ordering them to establish a civil order (government) to execute criminals who shed innocent blood. No woman was ever given the duty to lead a nation or perform the duty of civil service.

Genesis 10-11 – It was mighty Shem that tediously and meticulously tracked the development of the nations. Only the names of fathers are recorded because the leadership of these tribes fell to men.

Genesis 12 - God spoke to Abraham, not Sarah, and called him to courageously pick up stakes, leave family and friends, and lead his business operations to the Land of Canaan.

Genesis 12 – In order to protect Sarah, Abraham instructed Sarah to lie to lusty Pharaoh in order to protect his family. Because you don't owe the truth to men who abuse the truth (Pharaoh/government), this was the correct strategy and God was pleased to use it to save Sarah and Abraham from the murderous plots of this king.

Genesis 14 – When five kings raided Sodom and kidnapped Lot, Abraham ordered his army of trained soldiers to belt on the swords and to retrieve the hostages. Abraham's courageous, military strategy worked and saved his family.

Genesis 18 – Abraham was so powerful, gracious, and obedient to God that Sarah called him "her lord."

Genesis 18 – So powerful were the prayers of Abraham that God saved Lot from the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah.

Genesis 20 – Again, we see the Abraham employing a strategy of deception to save his family from the duplicity and power of King Abimelech. Sarah followed his lead, and God saved the family.

Genesis 22 – When God ordered Abraham to sacrifice his son on Mt. Moriah, he did not consult Sarah. He courageously and faithfully obeyed. Can you even imagine what would have happened if he would have discussed this with Sarah?

Genesis 27-50 – We see the nail-biting courage and finesse of Jacob leading his two wives and twelve children through the treacherous land of Canaan. God was pleased to call Himself "the God of Jacob." He was not called the God of Rachael or Leah.

Genesis 37-50 – God used the wisdom and strength and industry of Joseph, a man's man, to save his family and a nation from the terrible famine that gripped the Levant.

Note: God uses men, godly men, and endows them with the strength of Odin and Thor to fight, battle, and wage war against the forces of evil that threatened their families.

Exodus – Consider God delivered His people from the chains and whips of taskmaster in Egypt through Moses—a mighty man trained in all the wisdom and knowledge of Cairo University; a man trained to shepherd sheep; a man trained in law to shape a nation out of slaves. God did not use a woman to lead the nation. He used a man, a man’s man, the best Egypt had to offer.

After God destroyed the armies of Pharaoh at the Red Sea, the people discovered that God was not a shy, passive, wimpy, 90 pound weakling, but a bone-breaking, skull crushing “Man of War” (13). Is this our view of God?

Numbers – In the first chapter God organized men twenty years to be an army—an army that would hack, slice, and de-bowel their enemies – and army that would defend mothers, wives, and children from murdering raiders that would seek to pillage their way to wealth and power.

Number – In chapters two and four, God ordained Levites who were armed with swords and ordered to kill any man who infringed upon divine rights. They were assigned worship duties as well as killing duties, the two, of which, are not inconsistent with manhood, spirituality, or the character of God.

God’s ideal man is one with praise in his heart and a doubled edge sword in his right hand (Psalm 149:6).

God even permitted enemies to arise in Canaan so the next generation of men would learn to be warriors and not become passive, compliant wimps (Judges 3:1-5).

What shall we say of Joshua, Caleb, Barak, Gideon, Samson, Boaz, Samuel, David, Daniel, the prophets, and the apostles. These were r tough guys with beards and armed to the gills with swords, bows and arrows, and spears. Samson slaughtered 1000 Philistines in one day. Samuel the prophet / priest executed king Agag and chopped his body into parts. David killed lions and bears; beheaded Goliath, and slew his thousands. And, we could go on.

Furthermore, one should consider the New Testament teaching on male and female roles:

The Spirit of God affirms God's law order: the headship of the man, and the requirement for women to veil themselves as a symbolic representation of that law order (1 Corinthians 11: 1ff)

<http://nikeinsights.famguardian.org/forums/topic/the-ordinance-of-headcoverings-1-corinthians-11/>

God forbids women to speak in church; that is, teach or debate (1 Corinthians 14:35); and, <http://nikeinsights.famguardian.org/forums/topic/1-corinthians-13-let-your-women-keep-silent-in-the-church/>

God commands men to love their wives and for women to surrender to that leadership (Ephesians 5:25-ff).

<http://nikeinsights.famguardian.org/forums/topic/case-law-for-wives-in-ephesians-522-23/>

Paul instructed women to love their husbands twice in this passage and to be keepers at home (Titus 2:1-7).

<http://nikeinsights.famguardian.org/forums/topic/marks-of-a-mature-christian-woman-in-titus-2/>

God's law-order reserves the public duties of prayer to men . . . but not any man. It is restricted to holy men (1 Timothy 2:8).

God's law-order does not permit women to have authority over men or to teach men in a church setting (1 Timothy 2:9ff).

<http://nikeinsights.famguardian.org/forums/topic/the-unbiblicalness-of-women-bible-teachers/>

God's law order encourages women to be subject even to their own husbands (not to men), and to adorn themselves with a meek and quiet spirit (1 Peter 3:1-6). <http://nikeinsights.famguardian.org/forums/topic/case-law-for-wives-and-husbands-in-1-peter-31-7/>

God's law requires men to honor their wives, listen to them, and let their needs and wants be considered in the decision they make (1 Peter 3:7).

<http://nikeinsights.famguardian.org/forums/topic/i-peter-37-the-honorable-husband/>

Don't hear what is not being said. The Bible is not anti-woman. the Spirit was pleased to mention the faith of Sarah, the courage of Hebrew midwives, the nobleness of Ruth, the faith of Hannah, and the greatness of the Shulamite woman in the days of Elisha. There are five marvelous women mentioned in the genealogy of Christ (Matthew 1). Our Lord Jesus was pleased to have women in His company, to be in the home of Mary and Martha, and to first appear to women after his resurrection, and before He revealed Himself to the apostles. It is not a question of worth or value, but roles!

God's law-order is not a war on women. It is a war on sin working through men (irresponsibility and non-commitment), and a war on sin working through women (deception).

In summary, weak, passive, non-violent, wimpy, girly, effeminate men that won't fight and don't know how to lead, damage their family and sabotage God's plan for the home.

Where Christianity is strong you will find a man's man in the house, and a man's man in the pulpit.

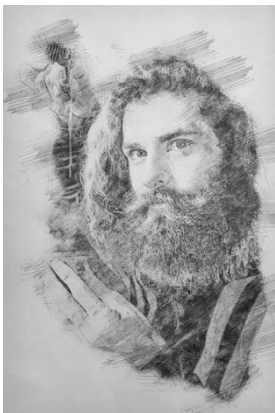
Where Christianity is weak and ineffective, you'll find women at the helm.

Plant an oak. Get back to the Biblical manhood that demands honest, tough-minded men lead the home, the church, and the nation.

1 Samuel 7:11 And the men of Israel went out from Mizpah and pursued the Philistines and struck them,

11.21. Manliness

"There was a man sent from God . . . " - John 1:6



Q: Besides Christ who is the greatest man in the Bible?

Being a male does not mean one is a man. Half the world is filled with males, but there are very few men among us.

The world is turning males into girly boys, pajama boys, and toy boys -- an abomination (Deuteronomy 22:5)"

Thus, the church has been feminized, and there is a dearth of real manhood in God's flock.

The need of the hour is manly men in the church of the Lord Jesus Christ

During Ezekiel's day, God sought real men, but FOUND NONE.

Ezekiel 22:30 And I sought for a man among them, that should make up the hedge, and stand in the gap before me for the land, that I should not destroy it: but I found none.

Who is the them? The "them" is described in 22:23-29 as prophets, priests, rulers, and the people. The text says there wasn't a real man, a gap-man, among them.

But, what is a gap-man?

General George Patton said that real American men love to fight and love the sting of battle. He is partially correct. Real men, gap-men, will fight for a good cause.

But, real manhood is not measured by the standards of a soldier general, but by divine standards of the living God.

Let's take a look at a real man sent from God so we can mark the character of a manly man. Note how the Apostle introduced John the Baptist.

John 1:6 There was a man sent from God, whose name was John.

Notice that John was Sent by God. The Lord did not send a committee, or a group, or a synagogue, or a corporation to do his bidding. He sent a man. The text calls him a "Witness" to the light. Light being a metaphor for truth and righteousness, John must have walked in the light in order to be a witness of the light.

John 1:7 The same came for a witness, to bear witness of the Light, that all men through him might believe.

Note the reality of human nature. Men are so blind to the light, they need to be instructed on what light is and where it is. Men are born blind . . . born sinners. They are not as bad as they could be; and, they are as bad as each other. All receive the nature of the first parents and all die.

The most dangerous force to mankind is not wind and rain or global warming or earthquakes or some virus, but sin in man. The greatest problem men have is not on the outside, but on the inside.

Jeremiah 17:9 The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it?

The problem that is destroying the human race is not in the environment, but in men. Evil is not blowing through the air, it is in men. Sin blinds men, and John bore witness of the light. Sin produces death and darkness. Jesus is the life, and the life was the light of men; i.e., He has the keys of life and death. His indestructible life is man's hope. The light shines in the darkness, and the darkness has not overcome it (John 1:4-5).

Notice that John was a Sinner for the Scripture says, "All have sinned." While John is included as part of depraved humanity, he was not as bad as he could be because he sanctified himself "through truth" like our Lord (John 17:19).

Thus, John was a Saved man . . . a Sanctified man—a man "from" God; that is, he knew God and belonged to God.

Notice that John was Servant of God. He knew God and consented to serve Him. He bent his will to serve the will of Another. He was not here on earth to get his will done, but to do the will of God.

Notice that John was a Simple man; that is, he was not complex, duplicitous, or double minded. Unburdened by materialism, John pursued evangelism.

Matthew 3:4 Now John wore a garment of camel's hair and a leather belt around his waist, and his food was locusts and wild honey.

Matthew 3:8-9 Bear fruit in keeping with repentance. And do not presume to say to yourselves, 'We have Abraham as our father,' for I tell you, God is able from these stones to raise up children for Abraham.

Notice that John was a Separated man. When asked who he was, he replied:

John 1:23 "I am the voice of one crying out in the wilderness, 'Make straight the way of the Lord,' as the prophet Isaiah said."

John was a Levite, a son of a priest, a Nazarite from birth, separated from sin; and, separated unto the Lord.

Leviticus 15:31 Thus you shall keep the sons of Israel separated from their uncleanness, so that they will not die in their uncleanness by their defiling My tabernacle that is among them.

Numbers 6:2-6 Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, 'When a man or woman makes a special vow, the vow of a Nazirite, to dedicate himself to the Lord, he shall abstain from wine and strong drink; he shall drink no vinegar, whether made from wine or strong drink, nor shall he drink any grape juice nor eat fresh or dried grapes. All the days of his separation he shall not eat anything that is produced by the grape vine, from the seeds even to the skin.

2 Corinthians 6:17 "Therefore, come out from their midst and be separate," says the Lord. "And do not touch what is unclean; And I will welcome you."

1 Timothy 6:11 But thou, O man of God, flee these things; and follow after righteousness, godliness, faith, love, patience, meekness.

2 Timothy 2:22 Flee also youthful lusts: but follow righteousness, faith, charity, peace, with them that call on the Lord out of a pure heart.

1 Peter 4:2 so as to live the rest of the time in the flesh no longer for the lusts of men, but for the will of God

Notice in the above text, John was a Straight man; a righteous, uncompromising ethical man; a man with a straight moral plume line; "a straighter shooter" to use modern vernacular. Consequently, he leveled mountains and filled in valleys.

John 1:23 He said, "I am the voice of one crying out in the wilderness, 'Make straight the way of the Lord,' as the prophet Isaiah said."

Matthew 3:2 "Repent, for the kingdom of heaven is at hand."

Notice in the above text, John was the sole Spokesman for God – "A voice crying in the wilderness." John lived in the wilderness away from the hustle

and bustle of the city. People are in touch with the noise of city life, but John was in touch with God. City folk listen to men, but John listened to his Creator. Notice that John was a Stand-up man – a man with moral courage to confront the sins of intimidating people like kings and queens.

Mark 6:18 For John had been saying to Herod, "It is not lawful for you to have your brother's wife."

John did not need big houses and fancy meals. He was content with little. Simplicity is not a simple thing. One must be able to escape the tyranny of the urgent to pursue that which is important; to escape the mundane to pursue the main thing; to subtract the obvious from the meaningful; to carry our weight in life without all the baggage.

Notice that John was an un-Stoppable man.

In contrast to the modern fickle Christian who gets his feelings hurt and leaves the church, John never surrendered to the capriciousness of human nature.

John did not give up, quit, or resign. His course was set, and he was not sidetracked by the criticism of men. John was not ashamed of chastity, but of adultery. He did not fight on his back, but on his feet. Resistance did not turn him into a cynic. Tough and tender, he knew no compromise. He was not easily discouraged or depressed. Nothing could derail him from doing the will of God.

Mark Twain observed that physical courage was quite common, but moral courage was quite rare. John was a rare, genuine man with moral courage. He did not speak about himself, but about Christ. And, according to Christ, he was the greatest man in history. Selah.

Matthew 11:11 Verily I say unto you, Among them that are born of women there hath not risen a greater than John the Baptist . . .

11.22. Marks of a Godly Man

"That the aged men be sober, grave, temperate, sound in faith, in charity, in patience." - Titus 2:2

The word "aged men" is the Greek word *presbutas* which refers to one's age in years. Six marks of mature manhood are identified:

"Sober" (*nephaleos*): Literally the word means free from the addiction of alcohol; that is, in his right mind.

Spiritually, however, it refers to sweet reasonableness that characterizes grandfathers; it is the opposite of being emotional and irrational; angry and bitter; subjective and glandular. He is a man with personal disciplines void of addictions to illegal substances or over indulgence in eating and feasting.

“Grave” (*semnos*): This word refers to being "respectable" or "venerable" or "reverend" or "serious." The ESV translates the word "dignified."

The mature Christian looks, speaks, and acts like a man of honor and dignity regardless of his economic status in society. A Christian man is a gentle man. He carries his head high with shoulders up. He stands tall because he is made in God's image and is the object of Christ's love and affection. He dresses smart. He is serious rather than silly; respectful, rather than disgraceful; sharp rather than banal; neat rather than disheveled.

A man's dress is a reflection of his theology and his attitude about life. His appearance says "excellent" and "appropriate."

“Temperate” (*sophron*): This word is often translated "self-control." It refers to sanity of mind and the ability to harness one's desires. Self-control is the foundation for leadership. A man who cannot control his own lusts and temper makes a lousy leader – a cast away for service (1 Corinthians 9:27). The mature man must be a moderate man, in control, not given to excess laughter, anger, or food and drink. He controls his desires, his mind, his speech, and his actions.

Furthermore, *sophron* is the one and only command given to younger men in verse six. It is all a young man can do to throttle the engines at work in his person. A man must conquer himself before he tries to conquer the world (Proverbs 16:32). A man must lead himself before he can lead a wife. The first requisite of leadership is self-control. Never trust a man who lacks self-control. He will poke out your eye, crush your hopes, and eat your heart.

“Sound in faith” (*hugiaino ta pistis*): Older men are exhorted to be healthy and whole in the faith, to be mature and balanced in doctrine having studied the whole of God's Revelation. A holy man practices a life of study and applies himself to learn all the Books of the Bible as well as the major doctrines in Systematic Theology. He is a Bible man and a discerner of truth and error. Furthermore, he makes appropriate applications of Scripture to his own life and family. Terms like balanced, wholeness, grounded in truth come to mind.

“Charity” (*agape*): The word "charity" refers to agape love. The mature man is a gracious and loving man -- a gentle man. While he believes in self-defense and may be armed, he is a threat to no man. He excels in love because he has a canon of love; that is, he is a man who defines love by God's law for "love is a fulfilling of the law." He does not define love as romantic feelings or a slobbering display of ooey-goey affection. He is concerned about actions.

He is not only a loving man, but a lawful man; that is, he is not a danger to his neighbors or their property. This does not mean he is passive or weak. He is not made of chocolate coated, Boo Boo Bear Cereals. He does not believe love is the solve-all for human problems. His love for God drives him to hate evil and workers of iniquity (Psalm 97:10).

He makes room for tough-love and the rule of law. In fact, his love is defined by law, not personal feelings. The charitable man has convictions, and he is probably on some government hate-list (1 John 3:13). While a lawful man, he may not be a "legal" man; that is, he is not too concerned about being in conformity to zillions of Caesar's laws, but he is vigorously committed to the simplicity of the law of Christ.

"Patience" (*hupomeno*): The Greek word *hupomeno* means to "remain under." It refers to that excellence of spirit that continues to be godly even under pressure. It is that quality of life that loves and shows grace even while he may be experiencing personnel adversities. It is the ability to love a wife and play with children even when depressed and burdened down by the pressures at work. The pious man does not run from problems. He stays on the Potter's Wheel even though under the painful process of sanctification. He does not revolt when he is "poured from vessel to vessel" (Jeremiah 48:11). He is godly even though he has a cross to bear.

11.23. Broke But Not Poor

You're not poor. You're broke

by Kate Smith

The Guardian, March 12, 2019

"My heart breaks when my friends conflate the two terms: understanding the difference between 'broke' and 'poor' is the first step toward building a more equitable society. I went straight from school into a full-time profession and did everything I was supposed to: I set up an emergency fund (six months of income put aside for a rainy day); I didn't use a credit card; I paid into my company pension. I was able to donate monthly to charity and even had enough left over for a budget-friendly vacation at the end of the year. I had a lot to be thankful for, and that feeling of good fortune only grew when I became a mother.

But then, things started to go wrong. My youngest child was diagnosed with a developmental disability and was hospitalized. For me to continue working, he'd need special one-on-one childcare. (I was quoted a rate of \$41 an hour – more than I earned in my own job.) Thankfully, my employers allowed me flexible office time, so I could work from home part of the day and take my child to appointments and therapies, all of which cost money – money that was slowly slipping through my fingers.

I cut everything I could think of. I made everything from scratch, sold all we didn't need, learned how to grow vegetables at a community garden in Toronto and preserved the food I grew for the winter months. We shopped secondhand. We cancelled cable. I sold my laptop and lived without a cellphone.

But then I got sick and had to have surgery. Even after I used up my 15 weeks of employment insurance, I still couldn't return to work, as I was busy relearning how to walk. When I was wheeled out of the operating room after a second surgery, my first thought was: how will I afford food this week?

According to Canada Without Poverty, a not-for-profit anti-poverty organization, 1.3 million children in Canada live in poverty. (That's a staggering one in five kids.) We live in one of the richest, most developed countries in the world, yet 4 million Canadians face food insecurity. People like me.

Before long, I found myself sleeping on the couch so I could rent my bedroom to international students. I folded laundry to make a little cash for groceries, since I could do that sitting down. Yet I still couldn't pay my bills.

Nothing in my life before or since has humbled me quite like lining up for powdered milk, bread past its sell-by date and a small box of canned provisions.

There are many reasons your income can disappear overnight. You might get sick, as I did; your factory might close; your employer might implement mass layoffs. We live in a society where precarious seasonal and contract work without benefit plans is the norm, and genuine poverty is something that can happen to anyone.

There's a big difference between being "broke" and being "poor". Poverty is the daily agony of not having enough money for groceries, or having to decide between buying food for your children and paying the rent. Real poverty is isolating. It's living in fear of who will find out and how you will be judged. It's worrying about whether social workers will take your kids, as I did for several weeks when things were at their worst. (There was a point in my shame

about our poverty that even made me wonder if my children would be better off in a different family – thoughts that still haunt me.) . . .

I hope my children never flippantly use the phrase “I’m so poor”, just as I hope they will never experience true poverty again. There were days when I thought poverty would break us. It didn’t. But it did fundamentally change us. I hope it taught us to examine privilege and not to normalize excess . . .

We’re not exactly wealthy, but we have a rich life that includes trips to the library and free rec swimming. We take advantage of free museum passes from the library. Sometimes I splurge and make homemade hot cocoa. When I reflect on our life now, I can see we are often broke, but not poor.

For the rest of the article see:

<https://www.theguardian.com/lifeandstyle/2019/mar/12/poor-broke-difference-poverty-inequality-society>

From this perspective we consider our Lord who was broke (penniless), but not poor:

2 Corinthians 8:9 For ye know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that, though he was rich, yet for your sakes he became poor (broke), that ye through his poverty might be rich.

From this perspective consider that no Christian is poor. No minister is poor; broke maybe, but NOT poor.

2 Corinthians 8:9 For ye know the grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, that, though he was rich, yet for your sakes he became poor (penniless), that ye through his poverty might be rich.

11.24. Are you a U.S. citizen?

Who is your authority: King Jesus or the State?

The first duty of man is not to obey authority, but to question authority.

In a “free country” a good citizen is not a silent, passive, compliant, trusting individual, but one who questions the authority of a government officer to make sure that he stays within in the limitations of his constitutional restraints.

“We are fast approaching the stage of the ultimate inversion: [the stage](#)

where the government is free to do anything it pleases, while the citizens may act only by permission; which is the stage of the darkest periods of human history, the stage of rule by brute force." — **Ayn Rand**

"The issue today is the same as it has been throughout all history, whether man shall be allowed to govern himself or be ruled by a small elite." -- **Thomas Jefferson**

The greatest [calamity] which could befall [us would be] submission to a government of unlimited powers." -- **Thomas Jefferson**, Declaration and Protest of Virginia, 1825. *The Writings of Thomas Jefferson*, (Memorial Edition) Lipscomb and Bergh, editors, ME 17:445

"It is the responsibility of the patriot to protect his country from its government. " -- **Thomas Paine**

"Nip the shoots of arbitrary power in the bud, is the only maxim which can ever preserve the liberties of any people. When the people give way, their deceivers, betrayers, and destroyers press upon them so fast, that there is no resisting afterwards. The nature of the encroachment upon the American constitution is such, as to grow every day more and more encroaching. Like a cancer, it eats faster and faster every hour. The revenue creates pensioners, and the pensioners urge for more revenue. The people grow less steady, spirited, and virtuous, the seekers more numerous and more corrupt, and every day increases the circles of their dependents and expectants, until virtue, integrity, public spirit, simplicity, and frugality, become the objects of ridicule and scorn, and vanity, luxury, foppery, selfishness, meanness, and downright venality swallow up the whole society. " -- **John Adams**, *Novanglus Letters*, 1774

"I have sworn upon the altar of God, eternal hostility against every form of tyranny over the mind of man." -- **Thomas Jefferson**, *Letter to Dr. Benjamin Rush [September 23, 1800]*

"I am a mortal enemy to arbitrary government and unlimited power. I am naturally very jealous for the rights and liberties of my country, and the least encroachment of those invaluable privileges is apt to make my blood boil." -- **Ben Franklin**

"The greatest [calamity] which could befall [us would be] submission to a government of unlimited powers." -- **Thomas Jefferson**, *Declaration and Protest of Virginia, [1825]*

"An honest man can feel no pleasure in the exercise of power over his fellow citizens . . . There has never been a moment of my life in which I should have relinquished for it the enjoyments of my family, my farm,

my friends and books.” --Thomas Jefferson, 1813

*“All men having power ought to be distrusted to a certain degree.”
-- James Madison in The Federalist*

*“No man is good enough to govern another man without that other’s
consent.” -- Abraham Lincoln, October 16, 1854*

*“To protect the people and government from imposters, a duty is imposed
on all persons that have dealings with government to establish the
authority of those who claim to represent government.” (Dr. DR.
EDUARDO M. RIVERA Attorney and Counselor at Law California Bar
No. 52737 Admitted June 2, 1972 P.O. Box 14207 Torrance, CA 90503
310-370-3361). Dr. Eduardo Rivera, Attorney CA.*

*“The questioning of authority is not only a good thing, it is a necessary
thing. It is the backbone of freedom.” Marco den Ouden*

*“Whatever the form in which the government functions, anyone
entering into an arrangement with the government takes a risk of
having accurately ascertained that he who purports to act for the
government stays within the bounds of his authority, even though
the agent himself may be unaware of the limitations upon his authority.”
FEDERAL CROP INSURANCE V. MERRILL, 332 U.S. 380. Also see
Utah Power & Light Co. v. United States, 243 U.S. 389; United States
v. Stewart, 311 U.S. 60; and generally, in re Floyd Acceptances, 7 Wall.
666.*

11.25. The Federal Income Tax

How you handle taxes will make or break your marriage. No couple can be successful if they give the government everything it demands.

A study of the Federal tax program is overwhelming, but necessary to learn in the course of life. The following excerpts are from Freedom Law School:

“. . . The Internal Revenue Code (IRC), also known as “Title 26”, is broken down into 11 “subtitles”, with one appendix at the end. The subtitles are designated “A” through “K”. Subtitles “A” through “E” levy various taxes, and “F” is the subtitle concerning Procedures and Administration. Subtitles “G” through “K”, and the appendix, are irrelevant to any discussion of taxes for the general public. Subtitles “A” through “E” are as follows:

Subtitle A – Income tax

Subtitle B – Estate and Gift tax

Subtitle C – Employment tax

Subtitle D – Miscellaneous Excise taxes

Subtitle E – Alcohol, Tobacco, & Certain Other Excise taxes

Of interest to most Americans are subtitles A and C. These are the two taxes with which most Americans must contend with when they look at their paychecks and when April 15th rolls around.

. . . Most Americans today feel that the IRC applies to everyone. No matter how many Americans believe it to be true it is still factually and legally inaccurate. The IRC only applies to “taxpayers”. This is a pivotal point. Let’s see what the federal courts have said on this issue:

“The revenue laws are a code or system in regulation of tax assessment and collection. They relate to taxpayers, and not to nontaxpayers. The latter are without their scope. No procedure is prescribed for nontaxpayers, and no attempt is made to annul any of their rights and remedies in due course of law. With them [nontaxpayers] Congress does not assume to deal, and they are neither of the subject nor of the object of the revenue laws”. [emphasis added] Economy Plumbing and Heating Co. v. United States, 470 F. 2d 585 (1972)

As you can see, the IRC does not apply to everyone. Of course we really haven’t resolved anything because most Americans also believe themselves to be “taxpayers”. Why do they believe that? Because they’ve been told that they are. And not just told by this person or that, but told by everyone! Geez...everyone can’t be wrong – can they? To the chagrin of Americans who have taken the time to actually read the law, they find out that, “yes”, everyone who said he or she is a taxpayer was wrong.

What is the general definition of “taxpayer” provided in the IRC?

26 USC §7701(a)(14) - The term “taxpayer” means any person subject to any internal revenue tax. [emphasis added]

So...how do you know if you’re “subject to” an internal revenue tax? Ordinarily the first step would be to ask an expert, but as we’ve already covered, today’s “experts” are little more than mouthpieces for the IRS. Asking them would not be terribly useful if you’re looking for factual and objective answers. The second way would be to read the law for yourself; but where to start? Unfortunately, the best place to start is with a basic concept that you’ll not find stated in any tax law book anywhere.

The first concept that you need to learn about tax law (and law in general) is “context, context, context”. This is not the only legal principle you may need to know, but is certainly the preeminent one.

. . . How do we then apply these newly acquired principles (i.e. “contextual setting” and “jurisdictional limits”) to income tax? First we must take stock of the following jurisdictional fact: The IRC only applies to money or other forms of property that are within the lawful reach of federal and state taxing authority. Read that again. Read it as many times as it takes for that reality to embed itself in your mind. Now, let’s turn it over and look at it from the opposite view. The federal and state governments cannot tax anything that lies beyond their lawful taxing authority. O.K., we’ve got that; so how do we now determine what is within the government’s authority, and what is not? Fortunately, the question is not too hard to answer. The federal Constitution only recognizes two categories of taxation. One is a direct tax and the other is an indirect tax. [See the US Constitution, Article I, Section 2, Clause 2; Article I, Section 9, Clause 4; Article I, Section 8, Clause 1.] As far as American law is concerned, these are the only two classes of taxation. For us, they are the equivalent of the northern and southern hemisphere – together they are the whole ball of wax.

. . . Here’s a solid definition of “direct tax” from the US Supreme Court:

“Direct taxes bear upon persons, upon possessions, and enjoyment of rights” Knowlton v. Moore, 178 US 41

Virtually all taxes in this country are indirect taxes and not direct taxes. While many people will tell you that the test for determining if a tax is indirect is 5 that it can be passed along to another person (such as sales tax), we feel that the more useful and accurate test is if you can choose to avoid the “taxable activity”, and thus avoid the tax altogether. If one cannot avoid a tax without sacrificing the ordinary affairs of life, the tax is not indirect, but is direct. [See the section on Sales Tax within this site for common misconception concerning that tax.]

. . . The earnings of private Citizens in the course of their private affairs was not taxable before the 16th Amendment, and the same was true after:

“It is not, in view of recent decisions, contended that this [16th] amendment rendered anything taxable as income that was not so taxable before.” Evans v. Gore, 253 US 245 (1920)

. . . Although the average American doesn’t know it, they repeatedly declare themselves liable for state and federal income tax. This is a classic example of “what you don’t know will hurt you!”

. . . Before any reporting may lawfully be performed, it must first be determined whether the payment is actually reportable. A payment can only be subject to the reporting requirements of the IRC if the payment is first determined to be within the taxing authority of the government. And who do you suppose determines that? If you are a Citizen, and the payment relates to something other than interest, dividends, or patronage dividends from corporate activity, then it is you, and only you, who has the legal authority to determine if the transaction is taxable to you! There is no law anywhere in existence that designates anyone other than you to determine your tax status. If you decide the payment is not taxable to you, then you are under no legal duty to provide anyone with an identifying number, nor are they required to file an information return.

. . . Although federal taxation is a topic of considerable complexity, Original Intent has condensed the essential and significant elements to what you see in this treatise. It is our hope that this information will assist you and others in the proper administration of your own tax issues. The issues we have addressed are the following:

- 1) The term "income tax" can be used by the US government and its courts to describe revenue laws generally, or it can be used to describe a specific type of tax.
- 2) 16th Amendment "income" and the ordinary "compensation for labor" of the average American are not the same thing.
- 3) Each subtitle (A through E) of the IRC imposes a completely different type of tax and subtitle C taxes are not the same tax as subtitle A taxes.
- 4) No tax law can apply to you if in doing so it would violate one or more of your "unalienable rights" (unless it is a direct tax).
- 5) One of your unalienable rights is to exchange your labor for other forms of property (including money) without having to give a percentage to the government. The only way the government can tax such compensation is with a direct tax, and Congress has not imposed a direct tax upon compensation for labor.
- 6) You need not provide an identifying number if you've determined the transaction is not taxable.
- 7) No reporting is required if you've determined that the transaction is not taxable to you.
- 8) If the person making a payment to you wants to report the payment even after you've made the determination that it not a taxable transaction, that person may do so without a number and must affix the appropriate affidavit to the information return

9) Under the regulations created by the Secretary of the Treasury for tax matters, a person making a payment to you has no other remedy than the steps specified in item 8 if you refuse to provide a number. Actions such as firing you, or withholding payments owed, are not lawful options because no law specifies such conduct as a remedy."

Source: Federal Income Tax page, Freedom School, [federal-income-tax-page.pdf](#)

For a complete understanding of the tax code see SEDM: "The Great IRS Hoax."

11.26. Headcoverings: The Sign of a Family Under Christ

1 Corinthians 11

The sign of a godly married woman is not her wedding ring, but the veil she wears on her head in church

The wearing of fabric head coverings in worship was universally the practice of Christian women until the twentieth century. What happened? Did we suddenly find some biblical truth to which the saints for thousands of years were blind? Or were our biblical views of women gradually eroded by the modern feminist movement that has infiltrated the Church...? - R.C. Sproul



Figure 7: [Saint-Petersburg Theological Academy - 3-4 февраля 2017](#) - Wiki

There are three subjects in 1 Corinthians 11: headship, headcoverings, and head remembering. There are three icons in this chapter: headcovering, bread, and wine.

The practice of headcovering is just as much an institution of the church as baptism and the Lord's Supper.

The Ordinance of Headcoverings

1 Corinthians 11:4-5 Every man who has something on his head while praying or prophesying, disgraces his head. But every woman who has her head uncovered while praying or prophesying, disgraces her head; for she is one and the same with her whose head is shaved.

It has been a tradition for men to remove their hats during prayer and for women to wear a

headcovering during prayer since the conception of Christianity.

Christian art is dominated by women adorning themselves with a veil or scarf.

Among the Amish, Mennonites, and Plymouth Brethren, and some Presbyterian and Baptist churches, the practice still continues.

All of these groups have a high view of Scripture and their people are known for their piety. In the major denominations, men still remove their hats in church, but unfortunately, the wearing of the veil by women has been abrogated by compromised Christianity.

There are several reasons why modern women do not cover their heads in prayer.

First, the American church is very much a product of the culture. Around 1960 the practice of women covering their heads in prayer shifted. In the age of movie stars and the inauguration of skin magazines, everything came off. Bikinis were in! Feminism burst on the scene and women were propagandized into the cult of arrogance.

By the time the mini-skirt rage hit the pop culture (1966), headcoverings all but disappeared in the church.

Second, the rise of feminism influenced theology and modern churchmen sipping from the cup of feminism culturalized the practice teaching that headcovering was just a local Corinthian problem wherein the early church did not want their women to look like temple prostitutes. But, this is only a slide into apostasy.

The trend to culturalize uncomfortable parts of Scripture has infected the church to such an extent that even homosexuality, a Biblical abomination, is being accepted by churchmen. Following the anti-Biblical cultural argument, why not culturalize baptism, the Lord's Supper, the cross, and blood atonement?

Third, we are living in a day of apostasy. Few Christians read the Bible. Fewer still study the Scripture and believe in the principle of "sola Scriptura." Even



the principle of male headship in the home and the duty of a woman to obey her husband seems like an alien dogma to modern Americans. Feminism conquered alpha males.

Fourth, women spend a great deal of time preparing to go to church and which one of them wants to mess up their hair by wearing a veil? But, instead of pleasing men, woman

would do better to figure out what pleases God . . . and, wearing a veil pleases the Lord.

, as the world has defined "freedom" to do anything you please, the church as a whole plunged into antinomianism. Churches have become lawless. Preaching the law of God is seen as legalistic, stogy, and pontifical. In such a climate, men faithful to the Word may find themselves out on a limb all alone preaching to squirrels and chipmunks.

Let's look at Paul's argument:

Paul calls the church to imitate him as he imitates Christ (11:1).

The topic of this chapter is headship (11:1-2), head coverings (11:3-16), and Head remembering (11:17ff). The symbols are venerated in this chapter: the veil, the bread, and the cup of wine.

Paul advances an ancient truth, the hierarchy of authority: God, Christ, man, woman. This chain of command appears to be a solid, biblical, unchanging order related to Adam and the headship of the man in the family (Genesis 3:16).

[Note, the first law in Torah after the fall is that the woman shall be under the authority of the man.]

Paul exhorts men to remove any head apparel in worship and for women to cover their heads ("something down the head" like a scarf or veil) for the following reasons:

(1) Headship (11:1-4): The grand subject of this section is authority. God, Christ, man, and woman form the chain of command. Headcoverings are a sign of a women's obedience to God and acceptance of His law-order.

The wearing of a veil is a symbol of the Christ's. authority over man, man's authority over the woman, and that she is under her husband's coverture. The practice of a woman covering her head is a visible, object lesson that God created man to be the head and protector of his home and a woman to be his "helpmeet."

(2) Shame (11:5-6): Paul taught that if a man prays while having his head covered (*kata keppalas ekon*) having something down the head like a tallit or prayer shawl, he disgraces his head. The term "his head" appears to be a reference to Christ. A man who will not remove his hat during prayer, like the pope, shames the Lord Jesus Christ; and, is saying: "May no one ever never see Christ in church as He is not worth honoring."

Likewise, a woman who prays uncovered (*akatakalupto*), shames her head. It is not clear whether Paul is saying that an uncovered woman embarrasses herself or her husband. Since the context is headship and authority, I assume an

unveiled woman shames her husband and disregards God's chain of command - a rebellious failure to acknowledge God's law-order (Genesis 3:16).

Paul is emphatic! Every woman praying without something "down the head" expresses contempt for God's law-order and reproaches her husband. Thus, we conclude it is the duty of every man to instruct his wife about God's law-order and her duty to veil herself.

If a woman will not cover her hair, she was to be sheared that she might emotionally feel the shame of praying while uncovered.

An uncovered woman was like the *hetairai*, the temple prostitutes in Corinth and the adulteress who was punished by having to shave her own head



(Numbers 5:18). A shaved head is a universal stigma among women. So universally shameful is a bald woman, a shaven woman would be forced to wear a veil until her hair grew out again--a hard way to learn this lesson in that day!

Thus, shearing was the discipline for the rebellious woman.

(3) Theology (11:7): The reason given for the practice of veiling was theological. Removing a covering from the head of a male was a statement announcing the glory of God. When men remove their hats they proclaim, "May the glory of God be seen in this place."

When a woman covers her head, she is making a statement, "May the glory of man be concealed in this place so the glory of God may be made known." "May God be honored here, and not men . . . or women!" This is consistent with our Lord's prayer, "glorify your Son, that the Son may glorify you" (John 17:1).

When a woman approaches God, she does so while graciously recognizing the role that He created for her. The veil is a statement that the Christian woman

accepts her husband's authority (or father's authority) over her. The whole idea of a unisex approach to God is foreign to Scripture -- a product of an alien law-order. He made us male and female and each has an ordained approach to God in worship.

(4) Creative Order and Purpose (11:8): The practice of hat removal and head covering recognizes God's created order and purpose. It teaches the ignorant about the order of creation, that man was created first and that woman was created second. Man (*adam*) was the head of the family—the woman his helpmeet. A woman's practice of covering her head is a symbolic statement that proclaims the creative order and the purpose of the sexes--that woman was created for the man, not the man for the woman.

Sexual differences are not the result of the fall, but the product of creation and God's law-order for the home. To prove the validity of the practice, Paul uses Biblical authority from Genesis. If wearing a headcovering was merely a cultural practice, Paul would not have appealed to the "Big Guns" in Torah to fortify a local custom. It would be inappropriate for any man to use the heavy artillery of the Law to support a temporal fad or a passing fashion.

Paul adds in this verse even the truth of the universal dependence of the sexes on each other lest any male should drift into arrogance and pride. Headcovering is about order, not superiority! Both men and women of faith are declared to be children of God (John 1:10-13).

(5) Education (11:10): Apparently, angels take a great interest in headcoverings. In Isaiah six, we notice that seraphim covered their faces and their feet with their wings in the presence of the thrice holy God. Holy things are often covered. The tabernacle and the veiling of the face of Moses come to mind.



Paul says the headcoverings educate angels about authority; i.e., angels are instructed in why Christ died for men instead of angels. Our Lord died, not because he was a martyr, but because He was obedient to His heavenly Father. His submission to the Father demanded a death-walk to the cross.

Furthermore, the headcovering instructs angels that their Lord died for sinful men who were made in the image of God and that he did not die for fallen angels who are mere servants of the Most High. When women cover their heads, they model our Lord's submission to His heavenly father—a wonderment to the angels.

(6) Propriety (11:13): Paul appeals to the Corinthian sense of propriety for the continuance of this practice. The custom of women veiling in prayer was so common in the churches, Paul could appeal to this tradition as a matter of orthodoxy—an honorable tradition in the early church.

Apparently, the practice of headcovering was a matter of apostolic authority with such established tradition in the church that it was not open to debate. The Christian position is more liberal than the Jewish tradition where women veiled even their faces, but more conservative than the libertine Corinthians where women paraded in public unveiled.

The Jewish tradition today for men in a synagogue to wear a *yamaka* is the exact opposite of Christian teaching[1].

Messianic communities that endure the practice of men wearing a *yarmaka* (or Catholic bishops) are taking their cue from modern unbelieving Jews rather than from the blessed teaching of Rabbi Paul, the bondservant of the Lord Jesus Christ; that is, veiled men join the rebellion of antichrists!

(7) Nature (11:14): Paul appeals to nature for the continuance of the symbolic practice of a women's headcovering. Men tend toward baldness. Long hair on women is a universal standard of beauty. Nature tells us that Christ is the head of man, and that women are the glory of man. Paul reasons that if a woman's long hair is given to her for a natural covering, she should be inclined to wear a spiritual covering ("something down the head") like a veil or scarf.

Paul is not saying that long hair is a substitute for a veil nor is he condemning a shorter hair style in public fashions. He appeals to natural law as a reason to practice the spiritual law. The whole idea that long hair is a symbol of submission is ludicrous and something even libertarians will not accept. Wearing a headcovering is consistent with nature because it is a spiritual sign pointing to the natural order of the original creation.

(8) Unity (11:15-16): Paul argues that the churches of his day practiced the custom of veiling, and he urges the Corinthians to adopt the same common tradition. Failure to comply exposed a contentious spirit; i.e., rebellion against God's law-order. His purpose of mentioning the term "contentious" was meant to cut off the debate. A woman who attends church without a veil shows contempt for God's law-order! Selah!

Out of all the reasons given to practice the tradition of headcovering not one was cultural.

In fact, Paul appealed to the principles in the OT to persuade these believers to accept the practice of veiling. Apostles do not appeal to the OT Scriptures to invoke a temporal, cultural practice. To speculate that Paul was addressing a local, petty cultural problem at Corinth is to invoke a rationale foreign to the

reasons Paul himself gives in this chapter. Furthermore, we would not only put words in the Apostle's mouth that is not there, we would ignore the reasons that are there.

An argument from silence is null and void.



The ancient practice of hat removal by men and wearing headcovering by women does not appear to have any practical value. The practice is iconic or symbolic of the Divine order for humanity. Since man is made in the image of God (icon), men are to imitate God. Women, on the other hand, are NOT the icon of man but the glory of man.

Women have no duty to emulate man or to accumulate masculine traits. In fact, they are forbidden to do so.

The practice of wearing a veil has been abandoned by many modern churches, but it has not been disregarded by Western Civilization even though most have no idea why they practice hat removing and hair covering. In going to football games or public events where prayer is offered, most men will remove their hats and helmets, and most women, if they have something on their head, let it remain. Isn't it ironic that the pagans honor the tradition while many churches have generally abandoned the Biblical practice?

The greater problem is not women, but Christian men who are either ignorant of the doctrine of head coverings or refusing to take a stand on head covering because they are living permissively in rebellion against God's law-order.

Let's look at what the church fathers had to say:

Irenaeus (120-202 AD): Irenaeus translates 1 Corinthians 11:10 as follows:

"A woman ought to have a veil [*kalumma*] upon her head, because of the angels."(Irenaeus, *Against Heresies*, Book 1, 8:2, cited in *The Ante-Nicene Fathers*, A. Cleveland Cox, ed., (U.S.A: The Christian Literature Publishing Co., 1885), I:327.)

Tertullian (150-225 AD) discussed whether the command for a woman to wear a veil applied to virgins. This discussion would not have occurred if headcoverings were not a common practice among the churches. Tertullian, *On Prayer*, cited in *The Ante-Nicene Fathers*, A. Cleveland Cox, ed., (U.S. A.: The Christian Literature Publishing Co., 1885), III:687.

Clement of Alexandria (153-217 AD): Clement understands the words in 1 Corinthians 11:5 to refer to a veil of fabric and not to a woman's hair.

"And she will never fall, who puts before her eyes modesty, and her shawl; nor will she invite another to fall into sin by uncovering her face.

For this is the wish of the Word, since it is becoming for her to pray veiled" [1 Corinthians 11:5 GLP].(Clement of Alexandria, The Instructor, cited in The Ante-Nicene Fathers, A. Cleveland Cox, ed., (U.S.A: The Christian Literature Publishing Co., 1885), II:290.).

Jerome (345-429 AD):

"It is usual in the monasteries of Egypt and Syria for virgins and widows who have vowed themselves to God and have renounced the world and have trodden under foot its pleasures, to ask the mothers of their communities to cut their hair; not that afterwards they go about with heads uncovered in defiance of the apostles command" [1 Corinthians 11:5].(Jerome, Letter CXLVII:5, cited in The Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers,

Philip Schaff, ed., (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans Publishing Co.), VI:292. 13. Augustine, *Of the Work of Monks*, cited in *The Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers*, Philip Schaff, ed., (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans Publishing Co.), III:523.

Augustine (354-430 AD):

*"We ought not therefore so to understand that made in the image of the Supreme Trinity, that is, in the image of God, as that same image should be understood to be in three human beings; especially when the apostle says that the man is the image of God, and on that account removes the covering from his head, which he warns the woman to use, speaking thus: 'For a man indeed ought not to cover his head, forasmuch as he is the image and glory of God; but the woman is the glory of the man.'" Jerome, Letter CXLVII:5, cited in The Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers, Philip Schaff, ed., (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans Publishing Co.), VI:292. 13. Augustine, *Of the Work of Monks*, cited in *The Nicene and Post-Nicene Fathers*, Philip Schaff, ed., (Grand Rapids, MI: Eerdmans Publishing Co.), III:158.(347-407)*

Chrysostom on (1 Corinthians. 11:3:

"The head of woman is man," compares God in his universal regiment to a king sitting in his royal majesty, to whom all his subjects, commanded to give homage and obedience, appear before him, bearing everyone such a badge and cognizance of dignity and honour as he has given to them; which if they despise and condemn, then do they dishonor their king. "Even so," says he, "ought man and woman to appear before God, bearing the ensigns of the condition which they have received of him. Man has received a certain glory and dignity above the woman; and therefore ought he to appear before his high Majesty bearing the sign of his honour, having no cover upon his head, to witness that in earth man has no head." Beware Chrysostom what you say! You shall be reputed a

traitor if Englishmen hear you, for they must have my sovereign lady and mistress; and Scotland has drunken also the enchantment and venom of Circe 5)let it be so to their own shame and confusion. 6)

Martin Luther (1483-1546):

On January 15th 1525, Martin Luther preached a message on marriage. In his sermon he said this:

Women, be subject to your husbands as to the Lord, for the husband is the head of the wife" [Ephesians 5:22-23]. Again to the Colossians in the third chapter



[3:18]. Because of this, the wife has not been created out of the head, so that she shall not rule over her husband, but be subject and obedient to him.

For that reason the wife wears a headdress, that is, the veil on her head, as St. Paul writes in 1. Corinthians in the second chapter, that she is not free but under obedience to her husband. 1)

John Calvin (1509-1564):

"When he says 'her hair is for a covering [1 Corinthians 11:15 GLP],' he does not mean that as long as a woman has hair, that should be enough for her. He rather teaches that our Lord is giving a directive that He desires to have observed and maintained. If a woman has long hair, this is equivalent to saying to her, 'Use your headcovering, use your hat, use your hood; do not expose yourself in that way!" (Seth Skolnitsky, trans., Men, Women and Order in the Church: Three

Sermons by John Calvin, (Dallas, TX: Presbyterian Heritage Publications, 1992), p. 53)

John Knox (1505-1572 AD):

"First, I say, the woman in her greatest perfection was made to serve and obey man, not to rule and command him. As saint Paule doth reason in these wordes: 'Man is not of the woman, but the woman of the man. And man was created for the cause of the woman, but the woman for the cause of man; and therefore ought the woman to have a power upon her head,' (that is, a coverture in signe of subjection)." (John Knox, "The First Blast Of The Trumpet Against The Monstrous Regiment Of Women," Works of John Knox, David Laing, ed. (Edinburgh: Printed For The

Bannatyne Club), IV:377.) (Emphasis mine)

Matthew Henry (in his *Commentary on the Whole Bible*, published in 1706)

"The woman, on the other hand, who prays or prophesies with her head uncovered dishonoureth her head [1 Corinthians 11:5-6 GLP], namely, the man, v.3. She appears in the dress of her superior, and throws off the token of her subjection. She might, with equal decency, cut her hair short, or cut it close, which was the custom of the man in that age. This would be in a manner to declare that she was desirous of changing sexes, a manifest affectation of that superiority which God had conferred on the other sex." Matthew Henry, Matthew Henry's Commentary on the Whole Bible, (McLean, VA: MacDonald Publishing Co.), VI:561.

A.T. Robertson (Word Pictures ~1931):

". . . it is the sign of authority of the man over the woman. The veil on the woman's head is the symbol of the authority that the man with the uncovered head has over her [1 Corinthians 11:10]." A.T. Robertson, Word Pictures in the New Testament, (Nashville, TN: Broadman Press, 1931), IV:162.

J. Vernon McGee (1904-1990):

"Apparently some of the women in the church at Corinth were saying, 'All things are lawful for me, therefore, I won't cover my head.' Paul says this should not be done because the veil is a mark of subjection." Thru the Bible with J. Vernon McGee, (Pasadena, CA: Thru The Bible Radio, 1983), V:50.



I can't help but think one of the reasons we are facing so many cultural problems in the family due to liberalism and the rise of feminism. Consequently, the Christian church has dropped the symbolic practice of men removing hats during prayer and women veiling themselves during prayer.[2]

Isn't neglect of God's law-order at the root of so many problems in the family?

Today, people do not understand God's creative order or his purpose for the sexes . . . or that there are ONLY two sexes. It is next to impossible to tell the difference between the godly and the ungodly, between men and women, between right and wrong not only by dress but by demeanor. Feminism wages war against gender roles and confusion reigns. The whole idea that a person

can choose his sexual identity is to proclaim that man is a god with his own law-order. Is it time to bring back the shears (11:5).

Though I am persuaded the practice has solid validity, I have come to realize that the casual church does not have the wherewithal to practice these truths; nor does the average Christian husband have enough rope on his bucket to dip into this well of truth taught in this chapter. Christians who are as shallow as a puddle on the sidewalk do not have the spiritual maturity to accept the ABC's of Christian doctrine.

A preacher who preaches the truth with any conviction will ruffle feathers, and may find themselves pecked out of the hen house; moreover, a woman who practices veiling may find herself scratching for grain alone under the porch.

Some teach it best to put this passage in the category of "doubtful things" (Romans 14) and leave the matter up to the individual conscience. But even this is apostasy. There is nothing doubtful about the command for a woman to veil her head.

The Apostle emphatically states, "if any man seem to be contentious (resistant to the practice of veiling), we have no such custom, neither the churches of God!" That is if anyone does not recognize this practice, he should not be recognized as a true Christian in the church of God! Such a person is not taking the Word of God seriously -- the attitude of apostates.

In conclusion, this passage declares three truths: headship, headcoverings, and Head remembering. The godly woman is exhorted to cover her head as a statement of God's law-order . . . that she is under his law-order.

[1] Jeff Raskin, 1990, describes rather humorously the origin of the yarmulke tradition in his History of the Yarmulke

(<http://humane.sourceforge.net/humor/yarmulke.html>). He says, it is not known when Jewish men began to wear the yarmulke. It is not rooted in ancient tradition, and apparently is a rather recent invention. It took ten men to make up a synagogue, and sometimes, Jewish men would gather outside under the Sun to pray where the bald men would get sunburned. At first, these men would pray under an umbrella to keep from burning themselves. Later, bald men, started wearing a skull cap to protect themselves. Somewhere after the sunburn and the umbrella, the rabbis of rabbis rejected the umbrella as sacrilegious and sanctioned the yarmulke as an approved form of sunburn protection. The common practice evolved into a standard liturgical worship apparel among Jews. Tradition!

[2] I was in an outdoor football stadium after 9/11 where the whole crowd of 35,000 observed a minute of silence. The men removed their hats, and the

women kept their hats on. Interestingly, the culture seemed to retain this tradition while the church has totally abandoned it. Personally, I can't figure out why the church has forsaken the practice unless it is due to the fact that women don't like to mess up their dry-blown hair on Sunday morning.

11.27. Divorce and Remarriage

Deuteronomy 24:1-4

Q: Does God permit divorce and remarriage?

Ans: Only because we live in a sinful world does God permit divorce--and that only in certain circumstances.

Some relationships become so intolerable that divorce is the only way to escape the misery. Divorce, therefore, is an act of mercy in this fallen world. However, divorce was never part of His original plan.



Unfortunately, divorce has become so common and decriminalized that Americans lose sight of the wickedness often associated with it.

On the other hand, some conservative Christian groups order marriage by the laws of the Medes and Persians forbidding divorce for any reason.

Divorce, sexual relations with another, and then remarriage to a former spouse is an abomination to

the Lord.

Deuteronomy 24:1 If a man marries a woman who becomes displeasing to him because he finds something indecent about her, and he writes her a certificate of divorce, gives it to her and sends her from his house, 2 and if after she leaves his house she becomes the wife of another man, 3 and her second husband dislikes her and writes her a certificate of divorce, gives it to her and sends her from his house, or if he dies, 4 then her first husband, who divorced her, is not allowed to marry her again after she has been defiled. That would be detestable in the eyes of the LORD. Do not bring sin upon the land the LORD your God is giving you as an inheritance.

Sinners are not always disheveled drunks dressed in rags:

Here is an example of the kind of evil that can come upon people without Christ and without law.

"Natalie Wood met Robert Wagner when she was 18 years old and he was 26. She had long had her eye on the famed actor and even told her mother when she was 10 that she wanted to marry him. Her dream came true when they wed in 1957.

Their romance was a rocky one though. They divorced in 1962. Wood had romances with Warren Beatty and Richard Gregson after she split from Wagner, but those didn't work out and in 1972 she remarried Wagner.

The love affair, however, ended in tragedy when Wood drowned during a 1981 boat trip. After the boat's captain came forward and claimed Wood and Wagner had argued aboard the boat, there was suspicion about Wagner's involvement. He has denied he had anything to do with her untimely death."

(<http://www.foxnews.com/entertainment/2017/12/19/hollywoods-most-dramatic-on-again-off-again-romances.html>).

Though the above couple is an example of a detestable divorce and remarriage, it is not detestable for a couple to get divorced, repent, and then remarry.

Divorce because of adultery was permitted. It is even necessary in some circumstances on the part of the innocent spouse to divorce an unfaithful partner. Divorce and remarriage is permitted in the case of abandonment was sanctioned by God for the innocent spouse (Matthew 19 and 1 Corinthians 7).

The Bible permits divorce on two grounds: (1) marital unfaithfulness (Matthew 19) and (2) abandonment which has many forms -- abandonment of God's law-order, abandonment of marital duty, abandonment of the person, home, or children; and, abandonment financially . . . or in some cases emotionally (1 Corinthians 7).

But, divorce from one first partner, remarriage to a second with another divorce, and then remarriage to the first partner is strictly forbidden.

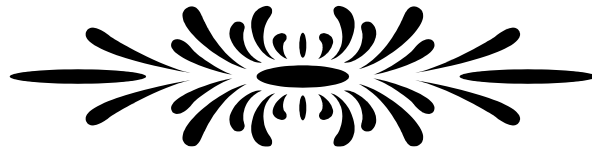
Under Biblical law, marriage is a contract. If one partner breaks the contract, the innocent spouse has a right to divorce.

Divorces are messy when it comes to finance, children, and possessions. Reconciliation is preferred but not always possible

Reconciliation is not possible, particularly in the cases of adultery where the guilty party may have picked up VD or has allowed sin to conquer his or her heart.

Church Courts

Churches have the authority to set up an ecclesiastical court, to appoint judges, to set rules, and adjudicate matters of dispute under a binding agreement by both parties. This is the preferred way to handle matters of divorce if the couples agree to this kind of settlement.



11.28. Sample Divorce Papers

Provided for the benefit of pastors under the common law

DECLARATION OF DIVORCE

between

Husband's Name & Wife's Name

The authority for dissolution of contract of marriage shall reside in the following:

Genesis 2:24 Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh.

Matthew 19:4-8 And he answered and said unto them, Have ye not read, that he which made them at the beginning made them male and female, 5 And said, For this cause shall a man leave father and mother, and shall cleave to his wife: and they twain shall be one flesh? 6 Wherefore they are no more twain, but one flesh. What therefore God hath joined together, let not man put asunder. 7 They say unto him, Why did Moses then command to give a writing of divorcement, and to put her away? He saith unto them, Moses because of the hardness of your hearts suffered you to put away your wives: but from the beginning it was not so. 9 And I say unto you, Whosoever shall put away his wife, except it be for fornication, and shall marry another, committeth adultery: and whoso marrieth her which is put away doth commit adultery.

1 Thessalonians 4:6 That no man go beyond and defraud his brother in any matter: because that the Lord is the avenger of all such, as we also have forewarned you and testified.

1 Corinthians 7:15 But if the unbelieving depart, let him depart. A brother or a sister is not under bondage in such cases: but God hath called us to peace.

No State shall . . . pass any Bill of Attainder, ex post facto Law, or Law impairing the Obligation of Contracts, or grant any Title of Nobility. (United States Constitution, Article 1, Section 10).

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances (Bill of Rights, Amendment I).

The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people (Bill of Rights, Amendment 9).

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people (Bill of Rights, Amendment 10).

No ex post facto law, bill of attainder, nor law impairing the obligation of contracts shall be enacted by the legislature (New Mexico Constitution, Bill of Rights, Article II, Section 19);

Breach of covenant responsibility resulting in a violation(s) of the elements of contracts and, or, fiduciary duties: mature parties, bona fide offer and voluntary acceptance (consensus ad idem) regarding duties and beneficial exchange required by the contract, mutual or sufficient consideration for a common benefit, time regarding performance of contract duties.



Parties			
Husband's Name:			Age:
Address:	City:	State:	Zip:
Wife's Name:			Age:
Address:	City:	State:	Zip:
Marriage Information			
City:	County:	State:	Date:
Children by this Marriage			
Name	<input type="checkbox"/> Male <input type="checkbox"/> Female		Age
Dissolution of Marriage			
This divorce agreement shall commence on the following date:			
City:	County:	State:	
Name of Principal filing this divorce document: <input type="checkbox"/> Husband <input type="checkbox"/> Wife			
Reason for this Divorce			
<input type="checkbox"/> Infidelity <input type="checkbox"/> Abandonment <input type="checkbox"/> Fraud <input type="checkbox"/> Breach of Contract <input type="checkbox"/> Other <input type="checkbox"/> Nondisclosure			
Explanation (optional)			
This basis of the divorce: <input type="checkbox"/> Mutual Agreement of Husband and Wife <input type="checkbox"/> Court Settlement <input type="checkbox"/> Unilateral Action			
Basis in Law: <input type="checkbox"/> Biblical law/common law/on the county <input type="checkbox"/> Statutory Law			
Name:	City:	State:	Phone:
Signature		Date	
Name:	City:	State:	Phone:
Signature:		Date	
Name:	City:	State:	Phone:
Signature:		Date	
Minister:	City:	State:	Phone:
<input type="checkbox"/> I believe this divorce has Biblical grounds <input type="checkbox"/> I do not believe this divorce has biblical grounds			
Signature:		Date:	
Court Settlement			
Court:	Jurisdiction		
Judge's Name:	City:	County:	State:
Authority:			
Basis in Law for this divorce:			
Divorce Approved on <input type="checkbox"/> Couple's agreement <input type="checkbox"/> Witness Testimony <input type="checkbox"/> Jury Verdict <input type="checkbox"/> Court Order			
Signature			Date
Title:			
Signatures			
Statement: With God as my witness, I consent to this dissolution agreement and state the above information is true and correct to the best of my knowledge and belief:			
Husband's Signature:			Date:
Wife's Signature:			Date:

Work Sheet

1. We have attempted reconciliation: YES NO
2. We have sought counseling and the counselors advise the following:
3. We agree there is no other good choice but for us to divorce: YES NO
4. I agree to work through a mature, reasonable divorce agreement: YES NO
5. The reason for this divorce is _____
6. We agree on the reason to dissolve our marriage contract: YES NO
7. We agree on how to state the reason for the divorce: YES NO
8. We agree to settle this dissolution in the following venue.
 - We will handle this privately using witnesses and a minister.
 - We need to settle this in a common law court with a judge and jury.
 - We need to settle this in a statutory, commercial court using divorce lawyers and a state judge.
9. We agree to the following terms on child custody including but not limited to primary custody, visitation.
10. We agree to the following child custody payments:
11. We agree to the following terms regarding cash assets:
12. We agree to the following terms regarding real estate:
13. We agree to the following terms regarding automobiles:
14. We agree to the following terms regarding business assets:
15. We agree to the following term regarding personal property:
16. We agree that that this dissolution shall commence on _____.
17. We agree on the following witnesses:
18. We agree we need to go to a _____ court.
19. Things still in dispute are listed below.
20. We will talk on again on unresolved issues on _____

11.29. For Victims of Divorce

Managing a Divorce

1. This is one of the toughest trials you will ever go through wherein you will be tempted with all kinds of emotional, mental, and physical joy robbers. You are being tested!! It will take most people months to a year to recover from the trauma of divorce.
2. KNOW that God has not forsaken you!! See Hebrews 13:5. Don't believe your feelings. Believe His Word.
3. Believe in his love and take comfort for it (Romans 8:32ff).
4. Accept this as God's discipline to make you a better man or woman (Hebrews 12).
5. Grief is acceptable. There is a time to grieve but do not let it turn in to bitterness or sulking or utter depression (Hebrews 12). Avoid drinking, smoking, drugs, fornication, etc. Holy introspection is appropriate. Allow God to identify your sins that contributed to the dissolution of this marriage.
6. Count it all joy (James 1:3). Go for an Oscar!! He has seen fit to give you this disappointment. Beware of ANGER, RAGE, and REBELLION.
7. Hope—as long as there is not a remarriage there is hope.
8. Love- take care of your daughter and provide for her financially. Involve yourself in good things. Do good.
9. Prepare for legal enslavement by the "system." While you have a lawful duty to support your daughter, you do not have a duty to support Connie in her rebellion. But, the court doesn't give a "damn" about God's law or justice—only the color of justice based on man's law.
10. Direct your energies into self-improvement like becoming a police officer and other endeavors. Grow in knowledge. Read. Develop new relationships. Seek new opportunities.

11.30. Law and the Christian Home

"Oh how I love your law! It is my meditation all the day. Your commandment makes me wiser than my enemies, for it is ever with me" – Psalm 119:97

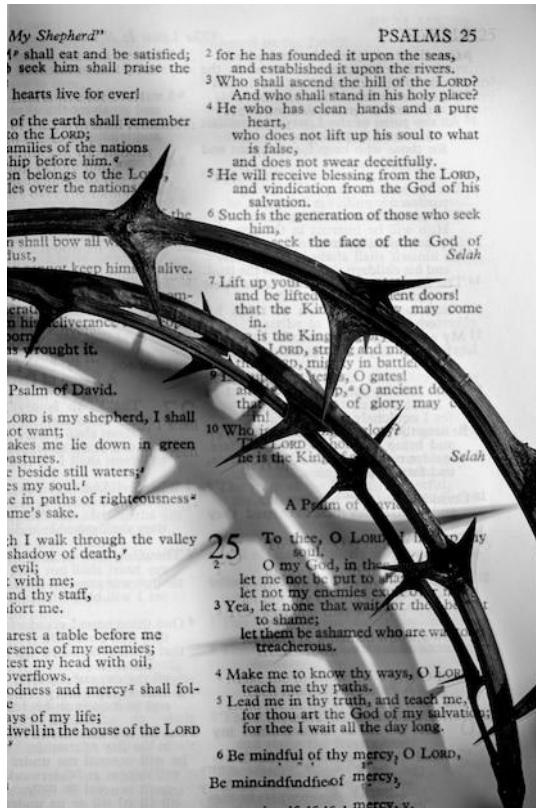


Figure 8: Courtesy of freepic home with His law.

Before Adam was married, God made him a lawyer – well, sort of . . . or more accurately, God placed him under law:

Genesis 2:16-17 And the LORD God commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden thou mayest freely eat: But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.

It is not romantic feelings alone or attractive personalities that hold a marriage together, but law that unites man and wife.

A Christian man is no more at liberty to choose the law that will govern his home than he is able to choose his parents.

We do not live in a multi-universe with multiple law orders. There is one God and one absolute law order. By His sovereignty and love, the Lord has gifted the Christian

It is a modern heresy to think that man is able to choose what law he will adopt for his marriage and that the law of the LORD God has no relevance or binding force on man today.

While the Christian is dead to the law as a legal indictment against him, as a death sentence against the sinner, Christ having died for his sin, he is not a man without law.

Every home must be governed by law or descend into chaos. Thus, it is the man's responsibility to know God's law, to introduce his family to law, and to govern his home with equity, righteousness, and love.

Without law defining right and wrong, there can be no love. Biblical love finds its complete expression in obedience to law (Romans 13:8).

Due to his justification by faith, and the regenerative work of the Spirit, the Christian man is very much alive to the law as the objective expression of the righteousness of God (Romans 8:4).

The strength of the Christian family is the absoluteness of their God. He does not change, and neither does His law for the Christian home.

The enemy of the Christian family is the spirit of permissiveness and hostility to binding rules that chips away at the family's devotion to Christian law and the grace that enables them to keep it.

Marriage is definitely a fellowship with man and wife on the same ship.

It is ignorance of God's law-order and rebellion against it that breaks up court ship. Once a marriage is docked and subject to Salvage Code Red, Emergency Repair may well be one of the most difficult jobs in the world.

A marriage without a captain or rules is destined to the salvage yard to be sold for scrap. If a court ship cannot be repaired after a major incident, what is left of the soul's core is sold for scrap on the open market of rebounding relationships.

The Lord has chosen the law that shall govern the Christian family, and it is a form of seppuku (Japanese suicide) to depart from it (Genesis 3:16; Exodus 20; Ephesians 5:22ff).

In every court ship stranded on the rocks on the sea of matrimony, you will find that either the captain or his chief mate, or both, have rebelled against the law.

The very definition of a Christian family is not "sugar and spice and everything nice," but a relationship that is ruled by the law of God.

If Christian law is not the law of the home, then it is not a Christian home.

So serious is abandoning the law in the sight of God is that it required the death of Jesus Christ to atone for sins.

Modern humanism locates law in the State making the State the god of the people. But, the modern State is polytheistic tolerating multiple gods and multiple law orders.

State law is evolutionary, always changing in order to force the will of the State upon the people. Not only does liberalism have no power to keep a marriage together, the whole system tolerates idolatrous abominations that divide and split families.

Thus, the first requirement for Captain Husband is that he master law and grace so he can navigate his ship on the high seas of marriage (Genesis 2:16; Psalm 119:1).

Basic Rules for a Christian Home

In a Christian home . . .

(1) Both the man and woman operate on the truth that they are creations of God subject to His law-order (Genesis 1:26).

The man was made first, and woman second; that is, the woman was made for the man, not man for the woman. She is to be his helpmeet and support his goals and ambitions (Genesis 2).

(2) The man is the head of the home; that is, the Christian home is patriarchal, not matriarchal. It has authority. It is male and not female. Therefore, it is incumbent upon every husband to accept this leadership role for the good of the family (1 Corinthians 11:1-3; Ephesians 5:23).

The first law a man must learn is to accept responsibility and the duties of family leadership.

There is no such thing as democratic Christian home where both the husband and wife get a vote. This is an American myth.

(3) God holds the man responsible to execute His law-order and purpose in the home with wisdom and grace.

Of the Ten Commandments, four of them deal with the family and their property.

(4) The man is the head of home . . . the head of the woman, and every woman, regardless of her talents, is responsible to acknowledge that authority and surrender to it (Genesis 3:16; Psalm 119:98; Psalm 97:1).

The first law the woman must learn is to accept the man's authority over her (Genesis 3:16; 1 Corinthians 11).

The great trespass of our age is the rule of women over buxom boys posing as men (Isaiah 3:12).

(5) The woman is commanded to acknowledge man's authority over her by covering her head with a veil during church (1 Corinthians 11:1-3). [No, this was not a command limited to Corinth! It is founded on fundamental Biblical law].

(6) Married couples give up certain rights to their own body when they marry, and they are not permitted to exert those rights after marriage . . . except when nature demands a health remedy (1 Corinthians 7:1).

(7) A woman must treat her husband with respect. She is not permitted to criticize, rail on, or slander her husband privately or publicly (1 Peter 3:1ff).

However, this does not mean she cannot help her man to become a better husband and father. She may correct her husband, with his permission, for his improvement as a man, and she may suggest courses of action.

[Ladies, consider asking your husband for permission to address your concerns at an appropriate time by asking something like this, "May I share something

with you that has been on my heart . . . “ Timing is everything . . . not the heat of the moment!

(8) The wife must learn to fear (*phobio*) her husband's position in the home. She may respectfully challenge a leadership decision of her husband, but she is not permitted to challenge his authority as leader in the home; that is, she must guard the means as well as the ends (Ephesians 5:33).

A wife who cannot accept her husband's God-given authority is free to leave; likewise, no man has to tolerate a woman who resist his authority and God's law-order for the home. Let her leave (1 Corinthians 7). Even the best of men cannot please a contentious, angry, bitter, thankless women (Proverbs 21:19).

(9) While the husband is the king of the home, the women is the queen, and the king is required to treat the queen very, very well (Ephesians 5:25; 1 Peter 3:7).

(10) Children are required to honor their fathers and their mothers and to surrender to their authority (Exodus 30:12; Ephesians 6:1-3).

(11) Fathers are ultimately responsible for the education and training of the children . . . not the mother, though she shoulders much of that responsibility (Ephesians 6:4).

(12) The man has no authority to yield his leadership role in the family. He may be corrected and grow, but he does not have permission to transfer authority to his wife . . . even if he fails.

(13) When properly applied, obedience to the law leads to freedom , not domestic slavery; to productivity, not futility; to joy and peace, not frustration.

(14) Christian men not only believe in the rule of law, they believe in the reign of grace. The Christian home is not only governed by law, but by love! Because our sins require the death of Christ, our righteousness requires grace towards those who disappoint us.

The commandments of the Lord rule the home, but grace is the prescription for human failure. Both the man and woman are sinners who sin. Salvation is the remedy for sins, and reconciliation to God calls for grace to admit wrong and to forgive wrong; that is, grace (forgiveness) is the antiseptic that cures all wounds. Grow in grace and your troubles will turn into triumphs (2 Peter 3:18).

(15) The Christian home is Christ-centered, not child-centered. It stresses responsibility that leads to freedom, not permissiveness that leads to conflict and bondage.

11.31. The Wonderful Words of Forgiveness

"Forgive as the Lord forgave you" - Colossians 3:13

Marriages succeed or fail based on their principles, and their ability to forgive one another when they fail.

Few words are more comforting than "I forgive you." Offering forgiveness to a disturbed soul is like offering a man a cold drink on a hot summer day.

Biblical Words for Forgiveness:

Nasa' or nacah: The first usage is found in Genesis 50:17. In the Qal form it means to lift, lift up, to bear, carry, support, sustain, endure, to take, take away, to carry off, and to forgive.

Psalm. 25:18 Look upon mine affliction and my pain; and forgive [nasa] all my sins.

Exodus 10:17 Now therefore forgive [nasa], I pray thee, my sin only this once, and entreat the LORD your God, that he may take away from me this death only.

Salach [saw-lakh'] means to forgive or to pardon; [Qal] to forgive, pardon; [Niph] to be forgiven. In Numbers 30:12, the Lord "released" [salach] a woman from a vow if her husband was not aware of it. Salach implies complete and total release from debt while not mitigating guilt [2 Chronicles 7:14].

Kaphar [kaw-far'] a primitive root expressing "to cover with pitch, purge, to make an atonement, to make reconciliation, to pacify, to propitiate; to cover over" [See Psalm 78:38-Kapar is in the Piel form.].

Jeremiah 18:23 Yet, LORD, thou knowest all their counsel against me to slay [me]: forgive [kaphar] not their iniquity, neither blot out their sin from thy sight, but let them be overthrown before thee; deal [thus] with them in the time of thine anger.

Kaphar means to wipe out [Qal], to blot out, to obliterate, or to exterminate or "to cover." It is the same word used in God's instructions to Noah to cover the ark with pitch [Genesis 6:14]. God is such a forgiving God, that in Jeremiah 18:23, the prophet has to pray that YHWH might not forgive or "blot out" the sins of those seeking to murder him. Jonah, knowing that YHWH was such a forgiving, compassionate God, resigned his prophetic calling fearing that God might show mercy on his fierce enemies, the Ninevites. And, when God pardoned the Ninevites, righteous, vindictive Jonah plunged into the pit of despair. Like Niagara Falls, forgiveness flows from His throne of grace on the rocky shores of humanity.

Aphiemi [Greek]: This word is used more than any other to represent forgiveness. It is used as a noun fifteen times [15] times and as a verb forty [40] times. It literally means “to send away” [Romans 4:5-6]. We see this in the tradition at Yom Kippur regarding the sending away of the scapegoat—a picture of God putting away sin from His presence. When God forgives sin, he sends it away.

Isaiah 38:17 Behold, for peace I had great bitterness: but thou hast in love to my soul delivered it from the pit of corruption: for thou hast cast all my sins behind thy back.

This metaphor communicates our sins are put “out of sight.”

Micah 7:19 He will turn again, he will have compassion upon us; he will subdue our iniquities; and thou wilt cast all their sins into the depths of the sea.

This metaphor suggest that sins are put out of sight and out of reach--a kind of “No Fishing” sign posted on the shore line.

Hebrews 10:17 And their sins and iniquities will I remember no more.

A second meaning of *apheimi* is “to cancel a debt.” See Matthew 18:27-- .” . . and forgave him the debt.”

Apoluo [Greek] means “to put away.” It is formed by two words: “*apo*” meaning “from” and “*luo*” meaning “to loose.” It is the same word used for “divorce” in Matthew 5:31. The idea behind this word is that God divorces our sin from our relationship with Him. In Colossians 1:13, 14, redemption [accusative] is identified as an act of forgiveness, the release from a debt.

Paresis in Greek means “remission” [Romans 3:25]. In OT times, God “passed over” sins; that is, He did not punish all sins immediately. This “passing over” of sins left God open to the charge He was too tolerant of sin. Though for a time, God “passed over” sin, He did not ignore it!! At the cross, however, the debt became due. At Calvary, He put away sin in such a way as to no longer hold repentant men responsible for it. God did not ignore sin. He punished it. At the cross the debt was demanded . . . and THE PRICE WAS PAID!!

Charizomai is the Greek word for “grace.” It infers unconditional favor or merit [Colossians 2:13]. *Charozomai* points to the nature of forgiveness: i.e., forgiveness is a gracious, kind gift from God. Forgiveness comes to those who are unworthy, but it does not come to those who are unrepentant.

Luke 17:3 Pay attention to yourselves! If your brother sins, rebuke him, and if he repents, forgive him,

Christians can error when they extend quicky forgiveness to criminals.

Dylann Roof fatally shot nine people inside Emanuel African Methodist Episcopal Church in Charleston, South Carolina, June 19, 2015. The remains of the dead were not even in the grave when the families said they forgave him and had no “malice in their heart.” There is something wonderful and disturbing in these people’s reaction to the ruthless murder of their loved ones.

In October 2006, Charles Roberts, a dairy truck driver, bearing a grudge, walked into a one-room Amish schoolhouse and executed four girls and wounding seven before killing himself.

On the afternoon of the shooting, an Amish grandfather of one of the girls murdered expressed forgiveness toward the killer. Soon, the whole community was swept up in forgiveness. At the funeral of Charles Roberts, the Amish outnumbered the neighbors visiting the Roberts family.

Without a doubt, the grace of the Amish deserves commendation, but there is something unsettling about such quicky forgiveness.

11.32. Problems with Quicky Forgiveness

“If your brother sins, rebuke him, and if he repents, forgive him.” Luke 17:3

True forgiveness not only forgives the wrong done, but the pain it caused. Forgiveness does not ignore wrong done. Rather, it confronts the sinner to open so that injuring party may grow in integrity and so that true forgiveness may be extended to the guilty soul. Few things in life are more refreshing than forgiveness, but few things are more wretched than quicky forgiveness.

Quicky forgiveness is not Biblical.

Consider the text, “If your brother sins, rebuke him, and if he repents, forgive him.”

Jesus did not teach automatic, unconditional, quicky forgiveness. Rebuke and repentance precedes forgiveness.

Extension of forgiveness against an evil doer is contingent upon repentance. “If he repents,” forgive him.

The conjunction “if” introduces a third class conditional clause which is dependent on a condition precedent of genuine repentance.

Obedying the command to forgive is a requisite dependent on a proper response on the part of the transgressor. If the transgressor does not repent, the extension of forgiveness is not required even though the offended must nurture the kind of faith that makes forgiveness possible.

Furthermore, the context is not criminal offenses (felonies), but minor shoulder to shoulder conflicts among neighbors.

Minor transgressions can be dealt with under church law, but crime must be dealt with through civil authorities and a vigorous application of criminal law.

God does not automatically forgive everyone.

Quicky forgiveness is a theological error rooted in universalism -- the belief that God is somehow obligated to forgive everybody simply because they pray.

God does not forgive people because they ask forgiveness. If this was possible, then God would not have needed to send His Son to die for sinners at Calvary.

His forgiveness is conditional because it is based on receiving His remedy for sin at the cross through the painful offering of His beloved Son.

Consider the verse, . . . *as God for Christ's sake hath forgiven you*" (Ephesians 4:32).

Quicky forgiveness fails to honor the cross and the sacrifice God provided for out sin.

To seek forgiveness through prayer apart from the cross and Jesus' shed blood endangers the soul. It is like clinging to a spider web while trying to climb the Empire State Building.

Quicky forgiveness promotes cheap justice.

Dietrick Bonhoeffer warned that, "*Cheap grace is the preaching of forgiveness without repentance.*"

Likewise, quick forgiveness strangles justice and diminishes its power.

Quicky forgiveness is not only an exploitation of grace, it is an abuse of justice. It says no justice is required, no justice is necessary, and that there are no consequences to sin.

Quicky forgiveness is like turning the wolves loose on the sheep. It says you can come into a pasture, kill and eat us, and no harm will come to you.

Justice as well as grace must find full expression in the life of a Christian. Both the exercise of forgiveness and justice is a duty of man:

"He hath shewed thee, O man, what is good; and what doth the LORD require of thee, but to do justly, and to love mercy, and to walk humbly with thy God?" (Micah 6:8).

Furthermore, there is a difference between an indiscretion of a neighbor that brings you grief and a crime where the transgressor injures you or your property.

Indiscretions can be confronted quickly and easily reconciled.

Crimes like murder, rape, and theft have dire consequences where strict justice must be applied!! Both justice and forgiveness are a duty of man.

To extend quicky forgiveness to a rogue borders on insanity as it denies principles of justice.

Quicky forgiveness harms the transgressor.

Quicky forgiveness is a "feel good" doctrine that robs transgressors of an opportunity to come to grips with their rebellion against God's law-order.

It does not give the transgressor time to reflect on the error of this ways.

It does not allow time for him to fully feel the pain and hurt he caused. It denies him an opportunity to make things right by providing restitution.

"I'm sorry," is not repentance!

Consider how much better it would be to wait until the sinner accepts the responsibility for his actions, to feel the consequences of his actions, and to come and say,

"I was so wrong to get angry and to break your mirror. I broke your trust, and there is no excuse for it? Is \$500 enough to cover your loss? Can you find it in your heart to forgive me?"

And, will you pray to God that I might be more like Christ. I will do my best not to hurt you again."

Wow, such wonderful repentance would be welcome and much easier to forgive.

But, if the offender does not take the time to repent deeply because of quicky forgiveness, the short process robs him of a chance to reflect on his sin and to grow in integrity.

It is like helping a butterfly out of his cocoon. He will end up deformed.

Quicky forgiveness harms the grantor.

Quicky forgiveness is a "feel good" solution to a host of problems; a new patch on an old garment shredded by claws of wickedness; a detour from the road to spiritual maturity; and, a childish act that turns a blind eye to the damaging consequences of sin. It is like giving an aspirin to a person with stage four bone cancer. . . like giving the Boston Strangler a get out of jail free card . . . like trying to fix a flat tire with bubble gum.

Quicky forgiveness is the pathway to bitterness.

What gangrene is to a wound, bitterness is to the soul.

Unconditional, automatic forgiveness is an escape from reality; a running away from pain; a band aid on a bullet wound.

Quicky forgiveness does not give the wounded soul time to feel the pain and to grieve; to go deeper into love; deeper into the cross; deeper into the sovereignty and providence of God.

Quicky forgiveness doesn't afford opportunity for the victim to confront the transgressor and to personally share with him the pain and suffering he caused.

Quicky forgiveness fails to recognize pain as a necessary part of life; that evil is real and has consequences; that evil must be confronted

Moreover, it does not give the grieved time to thoughtfully communicate to the transgressor his duty to fully repent and mend his ways.

When hurts and pains are not fully acknowledged, they fester. The result is bitterness -- gangrene of the soul.

The challenge here is to go deeper into Christ and the cross of Calvary, and not to escape the reality of pain by extending quicky forgiveness to transgressors.

Sometimes, it is not time to forgive. Forgiveness may need to wait for the transgressor's heart to soften and for his conscience to wake up.

Unconditional forgiveness robs both the wounded and the offender of a chance to mature in justice and grace.

The Biblical man acknowledges his wounds and the pain caused by a transgressor.

Out of love, he seeks an opportunity to confront the transgressor with his sin and the pain it caused. He is ready to forgive, but he does not extend an offer of forgiveness until the transgressor understands the depth and breath of his sin, repents, and humbly begs for mercy and grace.

11.33. The High Cost of Unforgiveness

Matthew 18:21-35

"Father, forgive them, for they know not what they do."

While forgiveness is expensive, no one can afford the HIGHER COST OF UNFORGIVENESS!

Look at what happened to Debtor: Look again at Matthew 18:21-35.

The King looked at his servant's debt [10,000 talents: one talent of gold is 57 lbs., he realized it was impossible to pay, the king, out of pity, forgave the man his entire debt. It was an offer . . .

The servant did not really grasp the forgiveness of the king; that is, he failed to grasp the grace of his king.

The servant left the King's presence thinking like a Debtor. Joy and thankfulness were missing.

The Debtor went to his fellow servants and demanded immediate payment.

When they could not pay up, the servant and oppressed his companions.

The Debtor struck fear [great distress] into the heart of his fellow servants and their families.

The Debtor spread misery by ordering their arrest and taking away their freedom.

When the king heard about the misery and suffering spread by his servant, the king was distressed. This was not good, because the king had all the power.

When the servant appeared before the king, the king withdrew his offer. A debt forgiven and not received, remains a debt still!

The king had the unthinking, unthankful, ungrateful, wicked servant thrown into a miserable first-century prison.

The Lesson: No one can afford the High Cost of Unforgiveness.

Matthew 6:15 But if ye forgive not men their trespasses, neither will your Father forgive your trespasses.

Jesus declared that if we do not forgive people (repentant people) of their trespasses, that God will not forgive us. Without His forgiveness there is no fellowship with Him, no power, no answered prayer, no peace, no rest, and no relief. The lions of revenge can devour a soul. And what believer can afford to feed these felines roaring for a taste of blood?

11.34. Meet the Rechabites - God's Model Family

The Family that Obeyed the Fifth Commandment

by honoring their Patriarch

" . . . for Jonadab the son of Rechab, our father, commanded us . . ." - Jeremiah 35:6

Before us is a model man and a model family. The Rechabites are a model of sons obeying the 5th Commandment; of sons honoring their patriarch; and, of faithfulness to godly instruction despite allurements to do otherwise.

Those were terrible times, the worst of times. The demoralization of the nation was complete. Lawlessness and dissipation swallowed up society. Jerusalem was under siege by Babylon. Refugees fled to Jerusalem for safety. During the siege (589-596 B.C.), God ordered Jeremiah to assemble the sons of Jonadab (the Rechabites) in the temple in closed chambers, and offer them wine to drink. The sons of Jonadab refused the wine because their father had commanded the entire clan not to do so.

While in a state of awe, the Word of the Lord came to Jeremiah wherein the LORD God held up the Rechabites as an example of obedience in contrast to the delinquency of Israel. In Jeremiah's message, he announced that God would save and honor this family because they faithfully obeyed the command of their deceased father.

How many fathers are like Jonadab, and how many sons today do you know that carefully follow their father's instructions while alive, much less dead?

Oh, that fathers today were as wise as Jonadab and would model their family after his example. Oh, that fathers had sons like Jonadab!

First, Jonadab was a discerning leader of his family.

Remembering God's commandment to love the Lord with all his heart, mind, and soul, Jonadab provided spiritual leadership to his sons. Concerned about separation and holiness, Jonadab laid down laws for his grown sons and their families. It was a simple rule: do not drink wine, grow vineyards, or build houses to live in.

Further, he ordered them to dwell in tents and live as Bedouins in the land.

Even when his sons were brought into the temple complex by Jeremiah and offered wine, they refused the beverage out of deference to their father. Jonadab was not afraid to set limits, to issue orders, or to risk offending his children. He forbid them to do what other Israelite children were doing--going to wine parties and having a "good time" with their nominal religious friends.

Second, Jonadab was not a permissive parent.

Jonadab was not a legalist nor was he an authoritarian parent inclined to micromanage manage his sons' lives. His commands were few. Though there is nothing immoral about drinking an occasional glass of wine, Jonadab ordered his family not to do so; that is, he placed limits on his children. Though other fathers permitted their sons and daughters to drink wine and encouraged them to plant vineyards and build homes, Jonadab knew that this life style put them on a path toward the Poisonous Tree. He was concerned about holiness in an unholy age. Thus, he laid down rules, marked out boundaries, and set limits in order to prevent them from being poisoned by the hissing serpent.

To be a good father and mother requires that the parents defer many of their own needs and desires in favor of the needs of their children. As a consequence of this sacrifice, conscientious parents develop a nobility of character and learn to put into practice the selfless truths taught by the Savior Himself. ~ [James E. Faust](#)

Third, Jonadab was a holy man and a student of the culture.

He didn't go through life a free spirit wanting to be a "cool" parent. He wasn't interested in being a "friend" to his children. Rather, he sought to be a responsible patriarch. He saw himself under the authority of the LORD God with a duty to guide his family and protect them from the hissing snake and the Poisonous Tree.

Jonadab analyzed the demoralization of his country and came up with a plan to protect his family from the dissipation he observed among his countrymen. In looking at the moral laxity and revelry of men, he must have asked himself, "What is causing the corruption of our nation?"

He observed that behind the dissipation and want of devotion to God was an open bottle of wine. He put two and two together: depraved people drink lots of wine; wine comes from grapes; grapes are grown in vineyards; vineyards are managed by people who live in stone houses; people who live in stone houses live disorderly lives. Thus, he set a course and rowed upstream away from the norm.

Fourth, Jonadab's had sons that honored him.

Jonadab gave his adult sons instructions, and amazingly they obeyed! These sons faced the same pressures from their peers that modern youth face. Surely, they were invited to wine festivals and harvest parties. Surely, there were pressures to dress like and act like their neighbors. But, they obeyed their father, and must have said "No!" to the common social life that dominated the nation.

This is a model family. There is no hint in the text that Jonadab was an overcontrolling grandfather micromanaging every aspect of his children's lives. Rather, his instructions were limited and few--instructions necessary for holiness in times of apostasy.

So powerful was Jonadab, his family leadership became *the model for the nation*. So wonderful was the honor his sons showed to their father, that God promised that this family would never lack a man to stand before Him. So wise was the command of this man, that his leadership was memorialized forever in the Word of God. So simple and pure was the obedience of these sons and their families to their patriarch, God blessed them prosperity and happiness.

Two powerful lessons come to mind: First, don't be a permissive parent; rather, chart a course and provide leadership for your family; and second, honor your father and mother. The honor these adult children showed for the spiritual leadership of their departed father is nothing short of spectacular. *Oh, that all sons would honor their father as Rechabites honored theirs.*

In conclusion, we are living in terrible times of moral laxity, recklessness, and self-indulgence. Children are texting, on the internet, alone in front of the

television being bombarded with silliness, and at party after party with their celebratory "friends." Few are pursuing the excellence of Christ. The times call for fathers like Jonadab with insight and courage--men that are unashamedly non-permissive--men with reasonable strictness--men with 20/20 spiritual vision and radical leadership--men who are not afraid of offending their children and who will set rules and limits on their sons.

Secondly, the Spirit weeps . . . and cries . . . and calls out to sons to honor their father as the Rechabites honored their father. No one loves you as much as your parents. Sons would do well to do all they can to appropriate their parent's wisdom and follow it. The goal, after all, is not to be happy in one's self-indulgence, but to be holy in the cross-walk of Christ . . . and obedience has its reward (Mark 8:35; Luke 9:24; Matthew 16:24).

Jeremiah 35:18-19 But to the house of the Rechabites Jeremiah said, "Thus says the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel: Because you have obeyed the command of Jonadab your father and kept all his precepts and done all that he commanded you, therefore thus says the LORD of hosts, the God of Israel: Jonadab the son of Rechab shall never lack a man to stand before me."

11.35. Grace Upon a Family Under God

The Story of Jacob

If a man is going to be successful as father and protect his little ship from pirates and marauders, he's going to have to find a way to secure the blessing of God upon his life and family.

Who has the wisdom and power to steer his ship through pirate-infested waters against Captain Blackbeard sailing on Queen Anne's Revenge with his forty canons of thundering destruction? He needs a Captain that loves him and knows how to combat piracy. Jacob was such a man! His life was anointed with grace and God was pleased to own the title, "The God of Jacob."

Born near a serpent's nest of troubles, Jacob's life became a sermon on providence. The winds of adversity blew against him, and he achieved greatness most men only dream about. His name is forever included in the inscription, "the Lord the God of Abraham, and the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob." (Matthew 20:37). For those fathers in search of God's blessing for their family, it is imperative to study his life. Almost half of the Book of Genesis is dedicated to God's work in this patriarchal family.

Jacob was a man nobody loved.

He had a father that neglected him, a brother who hated him, a mother with the kind of love that could ruin a son, an uncle who could out shuffle a Nevada card shark. His two wives who fought for his affection in a sisterly rivalry that would make the Mary and Anne Boleyn sisters look like soul mates. His sons who would qualify for hit men with Fat Tony Salerno. Likewise, the man God loves may find himself living among people severely infected with the fruit of the Poisonous Tree

God chose to love Jacob before he was born

"As it is written, Jacob have I loved, but Esau have I hated."

Before Jacob had done either good or evil, God set his affection on Jacob and determined to do him good. A man seeking God's blessing would do well to remember that God loves, not because of who he is, but because of who God is-- a God of love. Seek His love; trust His love (Romans 9:13: 1 John 4:7ff).

Third, objects of God's love may be born into flawed families.

Jacob had the best of families and the worst of families. He was blessed to have perhaps the godliest grandfather any man has ever had. His parents were men and women of faith who knew God and who experienced His providential care in their lives but lived in two different worlds. His was a "Christian home" . . . but it was not without its flaws.

Over time Isaac grew blind, and physical blindness typified his spiritual condition. His brother Esau was a cross between a star quarterback and James Bond under the sheets of every foxy Bedouin with raven-black hair tumbling down her shoulders. His mother appears to have mastered the art of manipulation. Like so many Christian families, there was a mixture of the holy and the profane, the spiritual and the carnal, the word of God and the words from the hissing snake.

The family was an object of God's love, but toxins from the Poisonous Tree infected the hearts and minds of its members. Likewise, objects of God's love often come from imperfect families. Men would do well to thank God for their parents, and accept responsibility for their own responses to negative events that occur during childhood. No family can totally escape the viral affects from the Poisonous Tree at work in each member of the family. But, they can trust God for His remedy and His grace.

The man God loves chooses to live a life of integrity even though surrounded by misfits and madmen.

It seems to be fashionable for modern preachers to mock and slander Jacob as some kind of shyster with more snake oil than a used car salesman. But, this

presentation is lopsided if not completely errant. Jacob's name means "heal supplanter," or "footprint." It is the same word used in Genesis 3:15 of Christ wherein He would crush the head of the serpent with his heel.

Jacob is called a "plain" man in Genesis 25:27. The word "plain" (tam) means "whole," or "healthy," or "beautiful" or "integrity." Unlike his proud womanizing brother, Jacob was a man of integrity--a man with ambitions to take the high road and to avoid the low road--ambitions that would be tested again and again by tares in his own family. Likewise, the man who would enjoy God's blessings would do well to set his compass toward the North Star of Integrity.

The man whom God loves knows he needs God's blessing (25-27).

With holes in his socks sort of speak, Jacob knew he needed Christ. And, this is the beauty of Jacob. Unlike most men who do not know they have warts and blemishes, Jacob knew he was an ugly duckling. But, he wanted to be a swan. Neglected by his father, and favored by his mother, the man sought the blessing of Almighty God. In his adult years, he purchased the "Birthright" from Esau for a bowl beans. No, he did not deceive his brother or trick him. He made an offer, and his careless, sensual brother accepted it. The problem was Esau's, not Jacob's.

Esau despised his birthright; that is, he had no real heart for the things of God and such mundane things as the Messianic Blessing. A proud, arrogant man's-man, Esau had no need for God. Jacob, on the other hand, was desperate for God's blessing and assistance in life. Some have criticized Christians for using Christ as a crutch; with Jacob, Christ was his whole wheelchair!

God revealed to Isaac and Rebecca that Jacob would be the recipient of the Patriarchal Blessing (25:23). But, when it became time to formalize that blessing, Isaac by-passed the prophetic word and prepared to give it to his immoral son, Esau. Rebecca, overhearing the instruction for a ceremonial meal, ordered Jacob to slaughter two young goats so she could prepare a banquet for Isaac and trick him into pronouncing the blessing on Jacob.

What is a young man supposed to do when his father's instructions are as crooked a Robin Hood's bow and his mother has a plan to straighten the arch? To do nothing was disaster. Jacob obeyed. And, he obtained the birthright . . . but at so great a cost. The hoax split the family and rained death on relationships. Forced to flee, Jacob headed for Padam-Aram to find a bride among Rebecca's relatives.

The man God loves is kingdom minded; i.e. he has seen the way things are supposed to be (27:10-22).

Separated from his family, in a strange part of the country, alone with a sack full of fears, Jacob fell into a deep asleep. In his dream, he saw a giant staircase with white-robed angels ascending and descending upon that place with an order and dignity that would impress a perfectionist. It was the "House of God"--so different from the chaos in his own home. The man God loves does not need dreams or self-authenticating experiences, but he does need to meditate often on the Holy Scripture and to permit the Spirit of God to show him the things of God.

The man God loves may be the victim of deceit and treachery in order that he might grow in discernment and integrity.

Jacob arrived in Haran. When he met beautiful young Rachael, daughter of his Uncle Laban, Jacob became wide-eyed and bushy-tailed. Shortly thereafter, Jacob negotiated a marriage contract with his uncle . . . but Laban, having been infected by the fruit of the Poisonous Tree, had a shrewdness about him that would make Scrooge look like a saint. Out gunned and out matched, Laban locked Jacob into a lopsided twenty-one year contract for his own narcissistic purposes. This was a man that had more hocus-pocus than a Nevada magician.

A man of integrity, Jacob served his time. Forced to apply the laws of deception in this family war to increase his own wealth, Jacob managed to establish a lawful, profitable sub-corporation on Laban's ranch. Having been the victim of Laban's shell games and chicanery, Jacob secretly escape the clutches of uncle with his two wives, children, and much cattle.

Wiser and more discerning, he returned to Beersheba a man--a mature man favored by the Lord.

Likewise, the object of God's love would do well to understand that all his trials are designed to sharpen discernment and to deepen his commitment to the LORD God.

The man God loves would do well to understand that the path to Christian maturity is through the furnace of affliction.

The Scripture speaks of those who are not willing to be "emptied from vessel to vessel" (Jeremiah 48:11); that is, those who resist God's plan of sanctification for them. Without exception, all of God's holy ones are refined through trials. All are purified by being poured from vessel to vessel. Consider Jacob's trials in his own home trying to manage two rival sisters engaged in a baby contest to win the affection of Jacob (30); his bitter, secret escape from his uncle who acted more like a mob boss than a relative (31); the terror that seized him when he discovered his brother Esau was coming to meet him (32); the rape of his daughter and the murder of the men of Shechem by Simeon and Levi; the death of Rachael (35); incest by Reuben; messy prostitution of Tamar and incest by

Judah; the treachery of his own sons in the plot to murder Joseph; the famine and near loss of the family business; and his journey to Egypt.

So painful and chilling were Jacob's trials that when Jerusalem was under the horrible siege by Babylon, Jeremiah referred to the death camp as "the time of Jacob's trouble" (30:7).

But, through it all, God was not only with Jacob, God was in charge of the thermostat on the furnace. Likewise, the object of God's love would do well to accept trials from the hand of God as his tool to mature the man and to drive him into deeper dependence on Him.

John Newton, the man who launched the movement in England to free slaves was at one time an over worked slave himself burdened down with menial tasks.

The man God loves must wrestle with Christ to secure His blessing on his family.

Genesis 32:24 And Jacob was left alone; and there wrestled a man with him until the breaking of the day.

When Jacob heard his brother was traveling north to meet him, Jacob went into full panic mode. The last time he saw brother, Esau was working on an assassination plan to kill him. His fear was completely justified. Reviewing the evidence, Jacob thought his brother was coming to fulfill the murderous plot that was hatched when both were living with Isaac and Rebecca. Jacob divided his family into two groups and camped between them, alone!

Suddenly, without warning, the Angel of the Covenant approaches his camp, and Jacob finds himself locked into a contest with the Angel of God not unlike a championship wrestling bout between Hulk Hogan and Andre the Giant. It was a championship match between Jacob, the heel grabber, a.k.a. the Wily Weasel from the Wilderness of Beersheba, the Grand Slam from Padan Aram. His opponent is none other than the King of kings, the Lord of lords, the Lion of Judah, the Hound of Heaven, or the Heavenly Hercules. Alone, the two champions locked arms in mortal combat, neither giving an inch. So impressed was the angel with Jacob's tenacity, that he blessed Jacob, but not before dislocating his hip and changing his name to "Israel," Prince of God. Likewise, the object of God' love must understand that the blessing of God comes by wrestling it out with God. The match is never easy and often comes with a bitter price. The father seeking God's blessing may hobble the rest his life from his confrontations with God Almighty.

The man God loves has an imperfect children.

The Holy Scripture says that "children go astray from the womb." All have been bitten by the serpent. All are partakers of Adam's sin. His children are sinners,

and it is his job to lead them to Christ and the tree of life. Look at Jacob's family. His wives were bitter, jealous rivals. His daughter Dinah was raped by a prince at Shechem. His two sons, Levi and Simeon embarked on vigilante justice, hatched a fraud, and treacherously murdered dozens of men at Shechem shaming Jacob's reputation. His oldest son committed incest with his concubine. His eleven sons hated Him, were jealous of each other, and hatched a plan to murder Joseph but sold him as a slave to slave traders headed to Egypt, and they lied to their father. God executed two of his grandsons, Er and On, for rebellion and wickedness. His son Judah committed incest with his daughter-in-law, Tamar, posing as a prostitute.

And, if this is not confusing enough, consider this: Jacob's family was the family of God, heirs of the Covenant with Abraham, God's chosen, the ones through whom He was going to change the world through the Lord Jesus Christ. How would you like to pastor this mob? The point is this: the man God loves must be delivered from idealism about his children. All have been bitten by the serpent and carry with them the potential for idolatry, fornication, incest, adultery, lying, deception, murder, and fraud. The best parenting in the world cannot prevent the toxins from the Poisonous Tree infecting even the best of families. Children are born sinners, and until God saves them, they will do what sinners do. But, it is not hopeless. God was at work in this family and Genesis ends with an amazing, profound work of grace.

The man God loves will at times experience an eclipse of His love.

Genesis 42:36 And Jacob their father said unto them, Me have ye bereaved of my children: Joseph is not, and Simeon is not, and ye will take Benjamin away: all these things are against me.

Because of the extreme famine that hit that part of the Levant, Jacob's sons were forced to take a trek into Egypt to barter for grain in order to feed their tribe. The famine was pressing in on every family and aged Israel could smell the foul breath of starvation in southern Canaan. Upon their return, Jacob's sons gathered around their father. Their reports read like an obituary of doom and gloom from a Jail House Blues Publication (Genesis 42:1-36 ff):

Maltreatment: "the Lord of the land spoke harshly to us . . ." and, He accused us of being "spies."

The Ruler of Egypt "put us in prison for three days" and,

Let us out on probation: "By this I will know you are honest men . . ."

Unless we appear in his court, we will "die" {42:20}; and,

"He took Simeon from us and bound him" in jail as a collateral; and,

We will surely be indicted for grand theft because there was “money in our sack” (42:27); and, when we discovered the money, our “hearts sank” (42:28).

We can't go down to Egypt again unless we bring our “younger brother to” Ruler of Egypt.

No doubt, this was a dark day in Jacob's life. You can feel Jacob's faith slipping away like the air out of a punctured tire. The sunshine in his life disappeared behind clouds of despair. The cool winter of an arctic blizzard swept over his soul. “All these things be against me” he complained. But, God's chosen one was 100% WRONG!

Jacob boomed out, “You have bereaved me!” The smoke of evil canons thundering on his battlefield blinded him to the fact that God was in total command of his life, and that he was going to live out his days in safety, happiness, and in honor.

Jacob groaned again, “Joseph is no more.” But, this prince with God had no idea that Joseph was alive and the Ruler of Egypt, the Prime Minister of the richest, wealthiest, most powerful nation on earth. Joseph was not only in a position of power, but he was going to save his entire family from the bitterness of starvation.

Jacob despaired: “Simeon is no more.” But, Simeon was very much alive and never safer than under the custody of his brother Joseph.

Jacob rebutted: “You would take Benjamin” from me.” Little did he know that he and all his sons would be reconciled and live out their days together as one happy family in the luscious green pasture land of the Nile Delta.

Jacob concluded, “All these things are against me” not knowing that God was working all things together for good” (Romans 8:28); that soon, all his worries would turn into dust and all his hopes into nuggets of gold.

Thus, the man God loves must stand on this rock:

Romans 8:31 If God before us, who can be against us?

The man God loves will have his reward (46-50).

Judah reborn, Joseph discovered, Benjamin recovered, the entire family were safe in the land of Egypt from the seven year famine, “redeemed from all evil” (48:15).

The life of Jacob ends with him leaning on his staff in worship (Hebrews 11:21). His eyes were opened. Through all the troubles, pain and suffering, and through all the sin and neglect and transgression, God was at work delivering his family from the fruits of the Poisonous Tree and saving them for a grand purpose. His family would be called “Israel”, Prince with God, and his family

was destined to bring forth kings, priests, and saviors. All his prayers, faith, and suffering bore fruit for the glory of God.

Think of it. The son who honored his father the most became the savior of the world!

Jacob had one son that truly honored him and God used this son to save the nations surrounding the Levant. Jacob lived out his days as prince upon the earth. Upon his death, Jacob received more honor than he had in his entire life—more honor than any father in the Bible. A nation mourned his loss for seventy days (50:3) with "grievous mourning by the Egyptians" (50:11). His funeral procession extended from Egypt to Canaan. All the elders of Egypt, Pharaoh's cabinet, administrators, mayors, and Egypt's army with its many chariots and horses marched tearfully behind the brazier. Honor, fame, and respect poured forth at his death like whispers of rain.

Finally, the man that God loves relies not upon his own merits, but the grace of God to heal all family wounds (44-45).

The fruits of the Poisonous Tree were real and powerfully entrenched in Jacob's family: jealousy, manipulation, deceit, rape, incest, rage, anger, and murder. What could be worse? Yet, this is the family God chose to love.

In his grace, he marvelously delivered Joseph from his brother's evil plot, and set him on the throne of Egypt. As vice-regent of the Nile, Joseph went to work to save Egypt from a seven year famine. Little did Joseph know, that out of his own suffering, God would use him to not only save Egypt, but the whole known world . . . and his own fractured family.

In grace, Joseph confronted family sins in a way that purged the entire family.

In grace, he revealed himself to his murderous brothers and forgave them.

In grace, he brought them to Egypt and gave them the best land in the Nile Delta.

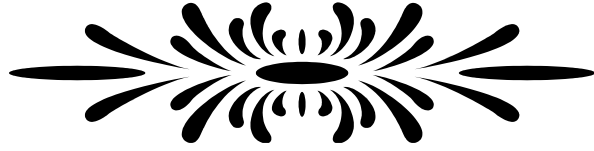
In grace he pointed his family to the powerful providence of God.

Grace is the key. Grace can undo what sin has caused. Grace can heal family sins. Grace can restore love and trust. Thus, the great lesson to all of Jacob's life is that of grace that undoes the effects of the Poisonous Tree.

Oh, my children, make the Lord your Captain and trust God to bestow grace on your family as you travel the seas of life.

Psalm 20:1 May the LORD answer you in the day of trouble! May the name of the God of Jacob protect you!

Think Grace!



12. References

Other Authorities

Ben Sira 36:14-24	139
Black's Law Dictionary, 6th Edition.....	130
Black's Law Dictionary.....	125
Declaration of Independence . 41, 46, 116, 129	
Eisner v. Macomber, 252 U.S. 189 (1920)	88
Hale v. Henkle.....	130
Marbury v. Madison	130, 141
Miranda v. Arizona	130
Proverbs 32 for Men	59
U.S. v. Minker, 350 U.S. 179, at 187.....	129
United States vs. Lanier on Certiori 95-1717	144

Constitutional Provisions

Amendment 9.....	140
Amendment I	126, 140
Amendments Eight, Nine, and Ten	124
Bill of Rights	124

Holy Scripture

1 Corinthians 15:10	38
1 Corinthians 10:13	31
1 Corinthians 11	passim
1 Corinthians 11:1-16.....	160
1 Corinthians 11:3	48
1 Corinthians 13	53
1 Corinthians 3:10	32
1 Corinthians 6:9-10	30
1 Corinthians 7.....	141
1 Corinthians 7:4,5	138
1 Corinthians 9:.....	58
1 John 1:9.....	181
1 John 5:21	158
1 John 5:4	28
1 Peter 2:12	155
1 Samuel 1-2	160
1 Samuel 25:41.....	172
1 Timothy 1:5.....	28
1 Timothy 3.....	160
Acts 5:29	140
Colossians 1:10	164
Colossians 3:13	78, 232
Colossians 3:23	108
Daniel 2:43	146
Deuteronomy 2:25	160
Deuteronomy 22:28, 29.....	138

Deuteronomy 23:17.....	138, 139
Deuteronomy 24:1-4	220
Deuteronomy 6:13	111
Deuteronomy 6:6-9	127
Ecclesiastes 5:19	83
Ecclesiastes 5:2-3	10
Ephesians 1:22	41
Ephesians 5 22-25	48
Ephesians 5:22-32.....	51
Ephesians 5:27ff.....	139
Exodus 14:4, 9	160
Exodus 20:3	158
Exodus 20:4	158
Exodus 20:7	111, 115
Exodus 22:16, 17	138
Ezra 2:58-63.....	136
Ezra 9:1ff.....	135
Genesis 1:27	101
Genesis 2	141
Genesis 2 & 3	35
Genesis 2:18-25.....	126
Genesis 2:7	42
Genesis 24	133
Hebrews 13:4	95
Isaiah 33:22	143
James 4:12	144
James 5:16	78
Jeremiah 35:6.....	239
John 1:6.....	196
Joshua 1:8.....	183
Leviticus 19: 20-30.....	138
Leviticus 29:2, 28	158
Luke 1:38.....	171
Luke 17:3	234
Mark 6:18	144
Matthew 18:21-35.....	238
Matthew 22:10	107
Matthew 4:4.....	37
Matthew 5:33	111
Matthew 7:24-27	11
Matthew 7:3.....	78
Nehemiah 10, 11.....	135
Nehemiah 13:1-3; 24-31	136
Nehemiah 8:10	21
Numbers 6:24-26	111
Philippians 4:19.....	83
Proverbs 12:15	18
Proverbs 14:25	17
Proverbs 18:15	115, 123
Proverbs 18:21	61, 65, 68, 76

Proverbs 18:22 14
Proverbs 20:6..... 183
Proverbs 31:12, 29-31 135
Proverbs 31:21-23 152
Proverbs 31:26 139
Proverbs 9:1 128
Psalm 103:1-22..... 26

Psalm 119:97..... 227
Psalm 32 27
Psalm 38 24
Ruth 2 160
Titus 2 160
Titus 2:2 199
Titus 2:3-5 166

13. Bibliography

Francis A. Schaeffer, How Should We then Live, Fleming H. Revell Co., New Jersey, (1971).

George Eldon Ladd, A Theology of the New Testament, (1974), Eerdmans, Grand Rapids, MI.

John R. Rushdoony, Institutes of Biblical Law (1973).

John Weaver Sermons, sermonaudio.com.

Sanders, J.O. (1971). The Incomparable Christ. Moody Press, Chicago.

SEDM, "The Great IRS Hoax."

Stockton, B. (2022). The Five Pillars of the Gladiator Gospel 2.0. Family Guardian: <https://nikeinsights.famguardian.org/forums/topic/five-pillars-of-the-gladiator-gospel-e-book/>

Stockton, A Family Under God - <https://nikeinsights.famguardian.org/forums/forum/biblical-insights/marriage-and-family/>

